

st
PREP
FIRST TERM

NEW
TERM

ALADWA
Gem

2024



• Contents •

Module 1 Family and friends

| | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Unit 1 | My family and me | 7 |
| | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1 | 49 |
| Unit 2 | It's my favourite subject | 52 |
| | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2 | 92 |
| Unit 3 | Monthly Models on units 1&2 | 95 |
| | Different people | 100 |
| Review | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3 | 137 |
| | Review A | 140 |

Module 2 The world around us

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Unit 4 | We're using technology! | 143 |
| | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4 | 180 |
| Unit 5 | Monthly Models on Units 3&4 | 183 |
| | Holidays | 188 |
| Unit 6 | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5 | 228 |
| | Let's eat! | 231 |
| Review | Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6 | 275 |
| | Review B | 278 |
| End of the Book | End of Term Practice | 281 |
| | Listening Texts | 285 |
| | Challenging Questions Answers | 286 |

**توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2023-2024
الفصل الدراسي الأول**

| Month | New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB) | | |
|-----------|---|----------------|-------------------------------|
| September | Unit 1 | December | Unit 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B |
| October | Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3 | January (2024) | General Revision |
| November | Review A + 4 + 5 | | |



Unit 1

My family and me

Objectives of the unit

Reading An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast

Tapescripts



Writing A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family

Listening An interview with twin brothers

Speaking Talking about your family; asking questions

Language Pronouns; present simple

Life Skills Self-management

Values Love of family

Issues Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging



SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 72 & 73

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

أفراد الأسرة Family members

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| aunt (n) | عمة/خالة - زوجة الععم/الخال | great-grandfather (n) | الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم) (n) |
| daughter (n) | ابنة | great-grandmother (n) | الجدة الكبرى (جدة الأب/الأم) |
| grandfather (n) | جد | son (n) | ابن |
| grandmother (n) | جدة | uncle (n) | عم/خال - زوج العممة/الخالة |

Both ذكور وإناث

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| cousin (n) | ابن/ابنة (العم/العممة/الخال/الخالة) | great-grandparents (n) | أجداد الأجداد |
| grandchildren (n) | أحفاد | parents (n) | الوالدان |

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| (be) aged (adj) | بالغ من العمر | interview (n) | مقابلة/حوار |
| band (n) | فرقة موسيقية | twin (n) | توأم |
| diary (n) | مفكرة/يوميات | family tree (n) | شجرة العائلة |

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

| | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------|
| arrive (d) (v) | يصل | football player (n) | لاعب كرة قدم |
| birthday (n) | عيد ميلاد | musical instrument (n) | آلة موسيقية |
| busy (adj) | مشغول/مزدحم | sports (n) | ألعاب رياضية |
| children's hospital (n) | مستشفى أطفال | together (adv) | معاً/ سوياً |
| favourite hobby | هواية مفضلة | use (d) (v) | يستخدم |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

hospital – uncle – hobby – aunt

1 My is called Wafaa.

يهدف هذا التدريب

لقياس فهمك

للمفردات الرئيسية

والإضافية.

2 Reading is my favourite

3 My cousin is in the because he's ill.

العبارات اللغوية

| | | | | |
|---------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| | music | يُعزف موسيقى | make > noise | يصنع ضوضاء |
| play > | chess | يلعب شطرنج | do > hobbies | يمارس هوايات |
| | the drums | يُعزف على الطبول | | يقوم بعمل تطوعي |
| go > | swimming | يذهب للسباحة | listen to > music | يسمع إلى الموسيقى |
| watch > | a football match | يشاهد مباراة كرة القدم | You're welcome. | عفواً. |

Prepositions

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| a picture of | صورة لـ | clap (ped) for | يصفق لـ |
| belong to | ينتمي إلى/يخص | proud of | فخور بـ |
| at the hospital | في المستشفى | on TV/the radio | في التلفاز/على الراديو |
| for no money | بدون مال | What kind of ...? | ما نوع ...؟ |

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | P.P. |
|---------|-------------|--------|
| drive | يقود/يسوق | drove |
| show | يبيّن/يوضح | Showed |
| hit | يضرب | hit |
| throw | يرمي | threw |
| write | يكتب | wrote |
| meet | يقابل | met |

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | معكوسها |
|--------|--------|--------------------|---------|
| finish | ينتهي | start/begin | يبدأ |
| true | صواب | false | خطأ |

الكلمات وعكوسها

Choose and complete:

to – for – do – make

- 1 Don't noise. Your father is sleeping.
- 2 That car belongs my uncle.
- 3 What hobbies do you in your free time?

يهدف هذا التدريب
 لقياس فهمك
 للعبارات اللغوية
 وحروف الجر.

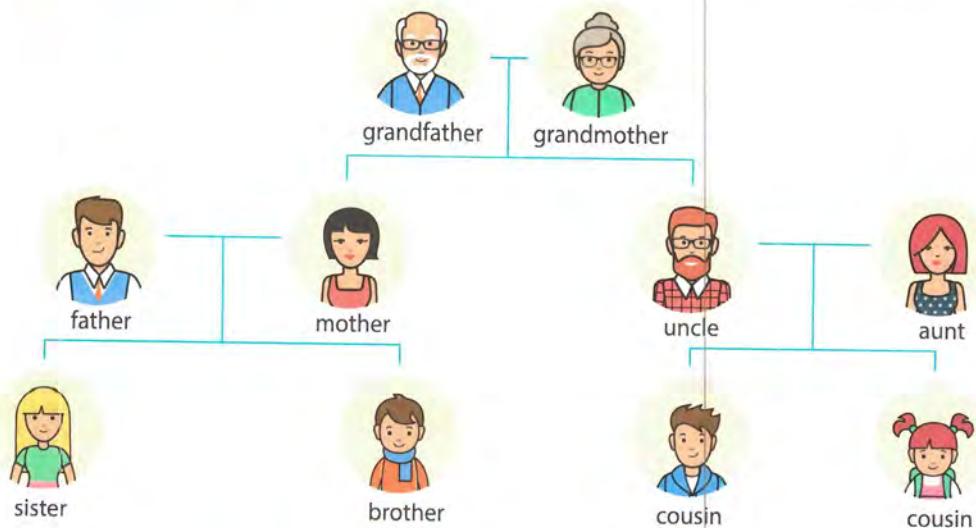
Check Point

Language Notes

1

Family members

درس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Relationship

grandfather is my father's/ mother's **father**.



grandmother is my father's/ mother's **mother**.



brother is my father's/ mother's **son**.



sister is my father's/ mother's **daughter**.



uncle is my father's/ mother's **brother**.



aunt is my father's/ mother's **sister**.



cousin is my uncle's/ aunt's **son/ daughter**.



يُسمى / يُدعى

2 is called

- My grandmother **is called** Huda.

3 Let's + inf.

هيا بنا (تستخدم لاقتراح)

- Let's go** to meet our grandparents.

4 , too

أيضاً (تأتي في آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- My mum is a teacher. My dad is a teacher, **too**.

5 go + (v + ing) / love – like (noun/ v + ing) يذهب / يحب

- I **go swimming** on Saturdays.
- I **like chess/playing chess**.
- I **love football/watching football matches**.

6 on + (Saturday, Sunday, ...)

تأتي مع أيام الأسبوع

- I play basketball **on Mondays** and **Wednesdays**.
- Tarek goes swimming **on Tuesdays** and he plays football **on Saturdays**.

7 twins (n)

توأم (اسم يمكن جمعها)

تشير إلى مجموعة من الأخوة أو الأخوات من نفس الأم ونفس العمر.

- Eyad and Adham are **twins**.

twin (adj)

توأم (صفة - لا تجمع)

- Sally is my **twin** sister.
- Hany and Hady are **twin** brothers.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father is Amr.

- a) calls
- c) called

- b) call
- d) cold

2 It's raining. Let's an umbrella.

- a) take
- c) takes

- b) taking
- d) took

3 I usually go shopping Sundays.

- a) in
- c) on

- b) at
- d) with

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

(1) مجموعات (2) الات (3) نفس المفهوم

Definitions

التعريفات

| | | |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| band | فرقة موسيقية | a group ⁽¹⁾ of people who play music together |
| chess | شطرنج | a game for 2 people |
| drums | طبول | musical instruments ⁽²⁾ which you hit to make a noise |
| twins | توأم | brothers or sisters who are the same age ⁽³⁾ |
| voluntary work | عمل تطوعي | work you do for no money |

هذا الجزء يساعد الطالب على فهم المفردات بشكل أفضل ويقوم بتهيئته لصف الثالث الإعدادي والمرحلة الثانوية.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|--------|--------|-------------------|---------|
| finish | ينتهي | end | ينتهي |
| true | صواب | right | صواب |
| arrive | يصل | come | يأتي |

Suffix اللاحقة

اللاحقة: حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف توضع في نهاية الكلمة لتكون الكلمة مختلفة وغالباً ما تغير نوع الكلمة.

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------------|---------|---------------|----------------|
| play (v) | يلعب | -er | | تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل | | player (n) | لاعب |
| music (n) | موسيقى | -al | | تحويل الاسم لصفة | | musical (adj) | موسيقي |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|-------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| diary | مذكره/يوميات | dairy | منتجات الألبان |
| band | فرقة موسيقية | bend | يشتني / يطوي |
| uncle | عم/خال | ankle | كاحل القدم |

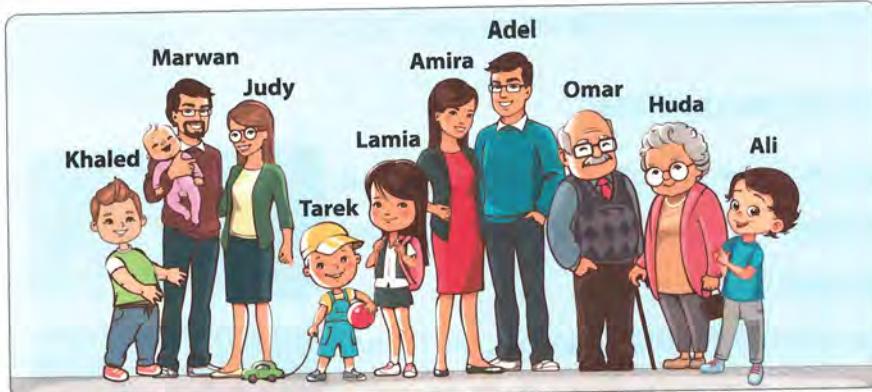
هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعنى ولكن مختلفة في المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How many members are there in your family?

Read and write the names of the people 1-10.



Lesson 1

SB page 3

(1) الوالدان

(2) ابنة

(3) ابنتك

(4) خالة

(5) زوج الخالة

(6) ابن الخالة

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my **parents**⁽¹⁾ are teachers at my school. They have one **daughter**⁽²⁾ – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two **sons**⁽³⁾ – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my **aunt**⁽⁴⁾. My **uncle**⁽⁵⁾ is called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my **cousin**⁽⁶⁾. It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Post-reading question: Choose:

- The main idea of the text is

a) Ali's family

b) Ali's school

c) Ali's day

d) Ali's hobby



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

daughter /'dɔ:tər/

picture /'pɪktʃər/

Listen and complete the text with possessive adjectives. WB page 72

Lara : Hi! **My** name's Lara and this is **my** family. That's **my** brother. **His** name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are **our** parents. We have one cousin, Khadeejah. **Her** parents are **my** uncle and aunt. **Their** names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's **your** name?

Pre-reading question: - What's your favourite sport?

 **Read the interview and answer the question.**

SB page 4

An interview⁽¹⁾ with twin⁽²⁾ brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged⁽³⁾ 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

Lesson 2

- | | |
|-----|---------------|
| (1) | مقابلة / حوار |
| (2) | تتوأم |
| (3) | بالم من العمر |
| (4) | الموسيقى |
| (5) | فرقة موسيقية |
| (6) | عمل تطوعي |

Interviewer: What are your hobbies?

Hazem I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.



Hatem And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!



Hazem I love football!



Hatem I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to music⁽⁴⁾.

Hazem He plays the drums in a band⁽⁵⁾.

Interviewer: Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work⁽⁶⁾.

Interviewer: What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!



Note:

Post-reading questions:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

1 Who always wins at chess? voluntary /vɒləntri/ Wednesday /wenz.deɪ/

2 **Choose:** The word "voluntary" means work you do

a) for a lot of money

b) for no money

c) for much money

d) to be rich

Pre-listening question:

- What are your favourite hobbies?

 Listen and complete the diaries.

SB page 5

Interviewer Can I ask you some more questions?

Hazem Yes, of course.

Interviewer Hazem, when do you play basketball?

Hazem I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Interviewer And when do you play football?

Hazem I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

Interviewer When do you go swimming?

Hazem I go swimming on Tuesdays.

Interviewer Wow, you are busy! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

Hatem I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

Interviewer What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

Hatem I listen to music. I like pop music.

Interviewer What do you do on Saturdays?

Hatem I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

Interviewer Thank you both.

Hazem You're welcome.



Post-listening question:

- List the activities that Hazem does every week.



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father and mother are my ١ - ٢٣ المفردات
a) grandchildren b) cousins c) parents d) daughters
2. This is my He's my mother's brother. ٣ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) son b) father c) ankle d) uncle
3. Your mum or dad's mother is your ٤ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) grandmother b) aunt c) grandfather d) grandparents
4. Osama plays the violin in a famous ٥ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) band b) bank c) bend d) pond
5. I like my Abdullah because he's very kind and friendly. ٦ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) aunt b) sister c) daughter d) cousin
6. Eman and Amany are They are sisters and aged 15. ٧ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) double b) couple c) twins d) pairs
7. I'm I don't have time to play. ٨ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) busy b) free c) ready d) strong
8. We usually swimming in the sea in summer. ٩ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) play b) go c) do d) make
9. Your sister is your parent's ١٠ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) daughter b) cousin c) mother d) aunt
10. My little brother is five years. ١١ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) ages b) age c) aged d) age's
11. My sister's is in October. It's a special day. ١٢ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) band b) birthday c) diary d) chess
12. I always chess with my dad every Friday. ١٣ - ٤٣ المفردات
a) do b) make c) get d) play
13. My father to football matches on the radio. WB
a) listens b) plays c) does d) watches

Time to Practise

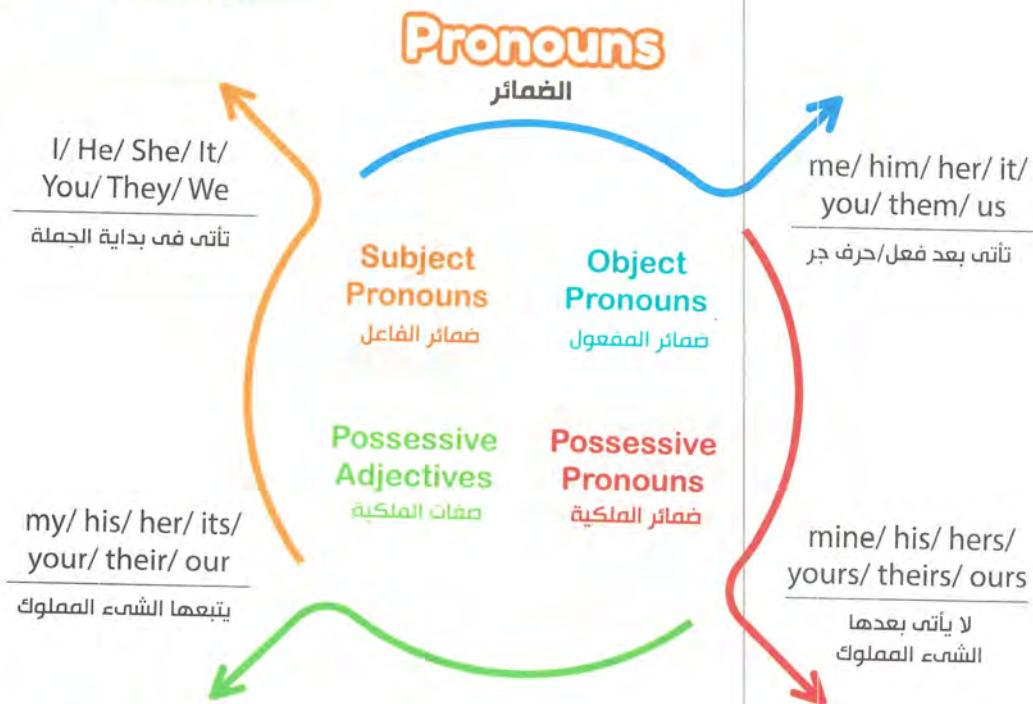


Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We never go to school Fridays.
a) in b) at c) for d) on
القاهرة - ٢٣
2. Reading and chess are my favourite
a) hopes b) foods c) meals d) hobbies
الدقهلية - ٢٣
3. I tennis matches on TV.
a) wash b) read c) watch d) write
الشرقية - ٢٢
4. Our parents are proud us.
a) at b) of c) on d) to
القليوبية - ٢٣
5. I usually to music on the radio.
a) listen b) hear c) make d) do
القاهرة - ٢٣
6. The teacher was angry because most boys noise.
a) made b) read c) watched d) wrote
الاسكندرية - ٢٣
7. A is a group of people playing musical instruments together.
a) parent b) party c) band d) chorus
بور سعيد - ٢٣
8. Your parents, brothers and sisters are called your family
a) friends b) members c) cousins d) aunts
القليوبية - ٢٣
9. are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.
a) Drums b) Guitars c) Flutes d) Harps
القليوبية - ٢٣
10. My brother has a/an to get a job.
a) instrument b) interview c) match d) visit
القليوبية - ٢٣
11. I write everything during the day in my
a) dairy b) interview c) band d) diary
القليوبية - ٢٣
12. She works at hospital for no money. She does work.
a) easy b) voluntary c) worthless d) bad
القليوبية - ٢٣
13. My favourite book is "Treasure Island".
a) cold b) called c) pulled d) scored
القليوبية - ٢٣

 لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language



1 Subject & Object Pronouns

ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول

Subject pronouns

ضمائر الفاعل (تاتي في بداية الجملة)

- | | |
|------|-----------------------|
| I | - I have a shirt. |
| You | - You have a book. |
| He | - He has a jacket. |
| She | - She has a dog. |
| It | - It has a long neck. |
| We | - We have a bird. |
| You | - You have a house. |
| They | - They have a car. |

Object pronouns

ضمائر المفعول (تاتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)

- | | |
|------|---------------------------------------|
| me | - My father bought it for me . |
| you | - This book belongs to you . |
| him | - This jacket belongs to him . |
| her | - I saw her playing with it. |
| it | - I like watching it . |
| us | - This bird makes us happy. |
| you | - This house belongs to you . |
| them | - This car belongs to them . |

Possessive adjectives**صفات الملكية**

صفات الملكية هي صفات تدل على الملكية، وتختلف عن ضمائر الملكية في أنها (يأتي بعدها الشيء الم المملوک)

| | |
|--------------|---|
| My | - This is my pen . |
| Your | - This is your book . |
| His | - This is his jacket . |
| Her | - This is her dress . |
| Its | - I have a car, its colour is red. |
| Our | - This is our house . |
| Your | - This is your car . |
| Their | - This is their bike . |

Possessive pronouns**ضمائر الملكية**

ضمائر الملكية هي ضمائر تدل على تملك الشيء وتأتي منفصلة (لا يأتي بعدها الشيء الم المملوک)

| | |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| mine | - This pen is mine . |
| yours | - This book is yours . |
| his | - This jacket is his . |
| hers | - This dress is hers . |
| | |
| ours | - This house is ours . |
| yours | - This car is yours . |
| theirs | - This bike is theirs . |



للسؤال عن مالك الشيء نستخدم (Whose) بمعنى ملك من/من

1. Whose + ... الشيء المملوک ?

- A: Whose pen is this?
- B: It's **my pen**.
- A: Whose shoes are these?
- B: They are Hoda's shoes. They are **hers**.

B: It's **mine**.

B: They are Hoda's.

2. belong to + مالك الشيء

- This dress **belongs to** my sister.
- These shoes **belong to** my father.
- It's my father's car. It **belongs to** him.

تخص / تتفق ل
وتستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1 This book is Mona's. It belongs to hers. (.....)
 - 2 That red bag doesn't belong to me. My is black. (.....)
 - 3 Huda and Omar love them parents. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (**her**) لأن بعد حرف الجر **to** نضع ضمير مفعول يعود على الاسم (**Mona**) وهذا مفرد مؤنث.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Mine**) لأن ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (**their**) لأن صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم (**parents**).

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخط مدعاة بأساليب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Throw the ball to , please. I am waiting.
- a) I b) mine c) my d) me
2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet
- a) he b) his c) him d) her
3. This is my aunt. name is Amal.
- a) His b) Her c) Hers d) My
4. Tell about your family.
- a) I b) my c) me d) mine
5. That's father's car.
- a) I b) me c) my d) mine
6. Our parents are proud of because we work hard at school.
- a) her b) us c) our d) she
7. Look at Basmala and Batoul! are walking quickly.
- a) They b) Them c) She d) Her
8. The children took books from the teacher.
- a) they b) their c) theirs d) mine
9. Ali is my friend. I'm writing a letter to
- a) him b) he c) she d) her

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. This car belongs to me. It's my. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
2. Ali is my best friend and her hobby is watching TV. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
3. Amira and Noha love them parents. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ دليل الشدائد
4. That's me pen and this is yours. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الشريطة
5. Can you give me you ruler, please? (.....)
6. I have got a brother. He name is Mustafa. (.....) ٢٠٢٤ Blas

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. My father gave his watch. ٢٠٢٢ الشقيقة
 a) I b) my c) mine d) me
2. The radio belongs to my mother. It's ٢٠٢٢ الشقيقة
 a) her b) mine c) hers d) his
3. Clap for the football players. played very well. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
 a) Their b) Them c) They d) Theirs
4. We can ride bikes. ٢٠٢٣ الإسكندرية
 a) ours b) our c) we d) us
5. Your dress is new. is old. ٢٠٢٣ الإسكندرية
 a) She b) You c) Mine d) Me
6. Hany and I are friends. live in Tanta. ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
 a) They b) We c) Us d) Our
7. Munir and Mustafa are twins. sister is called Radwa. ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
 a) Their b) They c) We d) Our
8. A: pencil is this? B: It's Heba's. ٢٠٢٣ الإسكندرية
 a) Whose b) When c) Where d) What
9. There are two dogs. are brown and white. ٢٠٢٣ القليوسة
 a) It b) Its c) They d) Their

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. That pencil case belongs to Ali. It's him. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
 2. It's her car. He often drives it. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ كفر الشيخ
 3. My son always does he homework at night. (.....)
 4. This red bag belongs to me. It's hers. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الإسكندرية
 5. She is my sister. I'm hers brother. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ القليوسة

◀ لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills



Write it right

How to write about your family

- My name's (**الاسم**).
- I'm (**عدد السنوات**) years old.
- My dad's name is (**الاسم**). He is a/an (**الوظيفة**).
- My mum's name is (**الاسم**). She is a/an (**الوظيفة**).
- I have (**عدد**) brothers and (**عدد**) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (**الاسم**).
- My grandmother is called (**الاسم**).
- I have (**عدد**) cousins. I love my family.

Example

My family tree

My name's Tarek. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He's kind and friendly. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people. I have one brother and one sister. My brother is called Hossam. He's 9 years old. My sister is called Nahla. She's 7 years old. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. I love my family very much.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"All about you"

My name's

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك

Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء
الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 1

Lessons
(1 & 2)

17

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.
1. Where does your family live?
a) In Paris. b) In Cairo. c) In a village. d) In Aswan.
 2. Where does your father work?
a) In France. b) In a school. c) In a hospital. d) In an airport.
 3. What's your mother's job?
a) A doctor. b) A nurse. c) An engineer. d) A teacher.
 4. How many brothers do you have?
a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- الشقة ٢٢ - ٣٠: الاسكندرية
- كفر الشيخ ٢٢ - ٣٠: كفر الشيخ
- WB: وحدة
- القاهرة ٣٣ - ٣٤: القاهرة
1. I like playing the in a band.
a) chess b) drums
c) football d) science
 2. Famous people usually have a life. They have no time to relax.
a) poor b) strange
c) busy d) normal
 3. Your aunt is your mother's
a) son b) sister
c) cousin d) daughter
 4. That necklace belongs my sister.
a) on b) with
c) to d) at
 5. "False" is the opposite of
a) true b) wrong
c) proud d) busy
 6. Maher voluntary work at a hospital.
a) goes b) gives
c) plays d) does
 7. We are all to be Egyptians.
a) pound b) proud
c) pond d) famous

٨. Tarek and cousin went to the park.
 a) his b) him c) her d) he
٩. dresses are these? They are Sara's.
 a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What
١٠. My dog is bigger than
 a) yours b) your c) their d) our

٣ Read and correct the underlined words:

١. The dog had his breakfast. (.....)
٢. This isn't our ball. Theirs is black and white. (.....)
٣. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday. (.....) ٤. Amgad takes her daughter to the funfair to play and have fun. (.....)

٤ Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your family"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ١ The twins are two children born at the time.
 a) same b) different c) similar d) difficult
- ٢ Everyone should a hobby to do.
 a) play b) take c) do d) have
- ٣ Here are the photos of Nader and me. are sitting under the tree.
 a) Them b) You c) We d) They

مجاناً على نهاية الكتاب

STUDY



Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 74 & 75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------|
| adventure (n) | مغامرة | mountain (n) | جبل |
| attic (n) | علية المتنزل/السندرة | orphan (adj/n) | يتيم |
| goat (n) | عذرة | sheep (n) | خرف/أغنام |

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------|------|---------------|---------------|
| airport (n) | مطار | city (n) | مدينة |
| beach (n) | شاطئ | Egypt (n) | مصر |
| bread (n) | خبز | How long ...? | كم العدة ...؟ |

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **lion – goat – mountain**

- 1 The is my favourite farm animal.
- 2 This is very high.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| catch > a plane | يلحق بالطائرة | see > birds | يرى الطيور |
| come > home | يأتي إلى البيت | walk > in the mountains | يمشي في الجبال |
| make > a video call | جري مكالمة فيديو | work > hard | يعمل بجد |

العبارات اللغوية

Prepositions

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| away from | بعيداً عن | in bed | في السرير |
| at the top of | في قمة | live with | يعيش مع |
| by bus | بالتاوبوس | on the phone | على الهاتف |
| communicate with | يتواصل مع | talk to | يتكلم إلى/مع |
| good at | جيد في | think of | يفكر في |

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | P.P. | Present | Past simple | P.P. |
|----------------|-------------|--------|--------------------|-------------|-------|
| catch يلتحق بـ | caught | caught | know يعْرِف | knew | known |
| drink يشرب | drank | drunk | take يأخذ / يستغرق | took | taken |
| feel يشعر | felt | felt | | | |

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | معكوسها |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------|---------|
| beautiful جميل | ugly | قبيح | |
| old كبير السن | young | صغير السن | |
| big كبير الحجم | small | صغير الحجم | |
| easy سهل | difficult | صعب | |

Check Point

Choose and complete: **do - come - make - at**

- 1 Sally is good playing chess.
- 2 We can video calls using the tablet.
- 3 When does your father home from work?

يمهد هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحوروف الجر.

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جداً
لأنها موقع اسئلة امتحانية.

يستغرق (وقتاً)

Language Notes

1 take + to + inf. (مدة زمنية + مفعولية)

- I took two hours to do my homework.

يساعد

2 help + inf. / to + inf.

- The internet can help you communicate with your friends.
- I helped my mother to make lunch yesterday.

3 would ('d) like to + inf.

- I would like to see my grandparents every day.

يود أن/ يريد أن

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 How long does it take to school?

| | | | |
|-------|---------|----------|-------------|
| a) go | b) goes | c) to go | d) to going |
|-------|---------|----------|-------------|
- 2 I'd like when I get older.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| a) travelling | b) to travel | c) travel | d) travels |
|---------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
- 3 The questions were very difficult. The opposite of "difficult" is ".....".

| | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------------|
| a) hard | b) easy | c) cute | d) unimportant |
|---------|---------|---------|----------------|

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثباتي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



التعريفات

Definitions

| | | |
|--------|---------------------|--|
| goats | ماعز | animals that are like ⁽¹⁾ sheep |
| orphan | يتيم | a child with no mother or father |
| attic | علية المنزل/السندرة | a room ⁽²⁾ at the top of a house |
| city | مدينة | a place with lots of ⁽³⁾ houses and shops |

مثل (1)

حاجة (2)

كثير من (3)

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|-----------|------------|-------------------|------------|
| beautiful | جميل | cute | جميل |
| big | كبير الحجم | large | كبير الحجم |

Prefix البداءة

| Prefix | البداءة | Function | الوظيفة | Word | الكلمة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة | | |
|--------|-----------------|----------|---------|---------|----------|--------------|----------------|-------------|---------|
| un- | تعطي عكس المعنى | happy | سعيد | unhappy | غير سعيد | important | هام / مهم | unimportant | غير مهم |

Countries & Cities

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Cairo | القاهرة | Morocco | المغرب/مراكش |
| Cape Town | مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا) | Oman | عمان |
| South Africa | جنوب إفريقيا | Paris | باريس |
| London | مدينة لندن (إنجلترا) | France | فرنسا |
| England | إنجلترا | Switzerland | سويسرا |

بلاد ومدن

هذا الجزء يوضح لك
الفرق بين الكلمات
المتشابهة في المعجم
ولكن مختلفة في
المعنى

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|-------|--------|--------------|-----------------|
| away | بعيد | a way | طريق/طريقة |
| sheep | خرف | ship | سفينة |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - Name two countries in Europe and in Africa.

 Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?

Lesson 3

SB page 7

Sami My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France⁽¹⁾. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt⁽²⁾ on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

(1) جنوب إفريقيا (2) مصر (3) فرنسا



On Saturdays, we play football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.

Aya My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa⁽³⁾. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there.



I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but I can't.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

South /saʊθ/

Cape Town /'kāp-taʊn/

Post-listening question: - Where do Aya's grandparents live?



Complete the text with these words.

WB Page 74

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school, and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we **go** swimming. My brother **is** three and he **doesn't** swim. He **watches** us!

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite story?

 **Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order.**

SB page 8

Heidi

by Johanna Spyri

Heidi is the story of an **orphan**⁽¹⁾ girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland.

Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the **mountains**⁽²⁾ and he has lots of **goats**⁽³⁾. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the **attic**⁽⁴⁾ of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of **adventures**⁽⁵⁾ in the city.

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|
| (1) يَتِيم | (2) جَبَال | (3) مَاعِز |
| علية المنزل (4) | مغامرات (5) | |



Note:

orphan /ɔ:rəfən/ Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/ attic /ætɪk/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question:

- Write a summary of the story.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A room at the top of a house is called a/an
 - a) kitchen
 - b) bathroom
 - c) mountain
 - d) attic

2. are animals that are like sheep.
 - a) Monkeys
 - b) Cows
 - c) Goats
 - d) Buffaloes

3. He has no parents. He is a/an
 - a) twin
 - b) athlete
 - c) orphan
 - d) footballer

4. We can a video call to our cousins in England.
 - a) come
 - b) do
 - c) make
 - d) write

5. My cousin is very good drawing.
 - a) in
 - b) of
 - c) at
 - d) about

6. He goes to the on Mondays and he catches a plane to Paris.
 - a) airport
 - b) station
 - c) club
 - d) school

7. I love my father, and I'm when he's at home.
 - a) sad
 - b) happy
 - c) ugly
 - d) bad

8. I always talk to my friends the phone.
 - a) of
 - b) in
 - c) on
 - d) at

9. I like my house because it's
 - a) beautiful
 - b) bad
 - c) orphan
 - d) ugly

10. Heidi in a bed in the attic of the house.
 - a) sleeps
 - b) walks
 - c) leaves
 - d) goes

11. Every day, Laila walks in the mountains to birds and flowers.
 - a) fly
 - b) see
 - c) eat
 - d) sleep

12. In the morning, I drink milk and eat and cheese.
 - a) water
 - b) tea
 - c) bread
 - d) juice

13. I usually go to school school bus.
 - a) to
 - b) with
 - c) on
 - d) by

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People like going to the in the summer to swim in the sea.
a) cave b) lake c) beach d) mountain
2. My dad works in London. He always a plane to go there.
a) comes b) catches c) sleeps d) arrives
3. I walk to school because my house isn't far away it.
a) at b) off c) to d) from
4. Heidi in the mountains with the goats every day.
a) walks b) flies c) watches d) takes
5. Many people use the internet to with each other.
a) stay b) live c) go d) communicate
6. Last week, I had a lot of in Dream Park.
a) adventures b) stories c) animals d) mountains
7. It twelve hours to go to Aswan.
a) makes b) takes c) gives d) talks
8. She is an orphan girl, so she goes to live her grandfather.
a) at b) about c) to d) with
9. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of
a) airports b) planes c) goats d) tigers
10. We should work to make our country great.
a) hard b) easy c) busy d) free
11. When I home, I have something to eat.
a) take b) give c) have d) come
12. Egypt is the most important in Africa.
a) village b) town c) city d) country
13. I like my grandmother, so I would like her every day.
a) to seeing b) seeing c) see d) to see

◀ حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في التعبير عن:

1

Facts حقائق

- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

2

Habits and routines عادات والروتين اليومي

- We usually play tennis on Friday.
- Ola listens to music every day.

I You We They (اسم جمجم)

> inf.

I play football at the club.

Form التكوين

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> inf. + s/es/ies

She walks to school every day.



يتم إضافة (es) للفعل المنتهي بـ

- Leila **washes** the dishes in the morning. - Hana **goes** to school on foot.

يتم إضافة (ies) للفعل المنتهي بحرف (y) ويسمى حرف ساكن

- Salma **studies** hard. - The baby **cries** when he's hungry.

- لنفي الجملة نستخدم (don't/doesn't) بعد الفاعل ويتبعهما المصدر.

I You We They (اسم جمجم)

> don't + inf.

I don't **play** football.

Negative النفي

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> doesn't + inf.

She doesn't **walk** to school.



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 My brother watch TV every night.

(.....) (.ch) مفرد، والفعل ينتهي بـ

2 Adel and Sami studies hard for their exams.

(.....) الإجابة الصحيحة (watches) لأن الفاعل (My brother) جمجم.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعاة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Yes/No questions

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| I | | he |
| you | | she |
| we | > inf. ...? | it |
| they | Question السؤال | (اسم مفرد) |
| (اسم جمع) | | |
| A: Do <u>you</u> play football? | | A: Does <u>she</u> walk to school every day? |
| B: Yes, I do./ B: No, I don't. | | B: Yes, she does./ B: No, she doesn't. |

Wh-questions

Q. word + do/does + subj. + inf. ...?

- Where **does** Tarek **live**?
- How **do** you **go** to school?

يمكن السؤال باستخدام "be" مع الصلفان

Am/ Is/ Are ...؟ صفة / اسم / حرف جر + الفاعل

1 Are you a teacher?

2 Is Ali ready for the match?

لاحظ

1

Verb "to be" يكون

يتكون في المضارع من:

- I am (am not) a teacher.
- He is (isn't) happy.
- They are (aren't) at home.

2

Verb "to have" يملك

يتكون في المضارع من:

- Mona has (doesn't have) a nice car.
- I have (don't have) money.
- We have (don't have) a big house.



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Do she live in Cairo? (.....)

تمكّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرّف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعاة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لوجود (she). (.....)

2 My brother doesn't travels to Paris. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (travels) يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

3 The boys don't happy because their father is abroad. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن (verb "to be") يتبعه صفة/اسم.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I to bed at ten every day.
a) goes b) go c) went d) going ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
2. How long does it you to come to school?
a) takes b) taking c) took d) take WB
3. Heidi doesn't with her parents. She lives with her grandfather.
a) live b) lives c) lived d) living
4. Maha like swimming.
a) not b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
5. your parents live in Giza?
a) Are b) Do c) Does d) Have ٢٠٢٣ الشريقة
6. you play chess?
a) Doing b) Do c) Did d) Does ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
7. How does Sami when his father is at home?
a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
8. What you listen to on the radio?
a) does b) are c) were d) do ٢٠٢٣ اسكندرية/المنيا
9. This bird beautiful colours.
a) have b) has c) having d) to have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. She is watching a nice programme every evening. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الدقهلية
2. Does he gets up early? (.....) ٢٠٢٣ المنوفية
3. Ali don't play football after school. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ المنوفية
4. Does you walk to school? (.....) ٢٠٢٣ اسكندرية
5. My father be in France for a holiday. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الاسماعيلية
6. Where are you come from? (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الفرنسية

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Reham is good at tennis. She it every day. ٣٠٢٣ المليونية
 a) plays b) play c) playing d) played
2. Mona go to school on Friday. ٣٠٢٤ بور سعيد
 a) don't b) isn't c) hasn't d) doesn't
3. We both English books in the evenings. ٣٠٢٥ القاهرة
 a) is reading b) are reading c) read d) reads
4. Fawzi and Hamdi painting. ٣٠٢٦ القاهرة
 a) love b) loves c) loving d) be loved
5. They a lot of milk. ٣٠٢٧ المليونية
 a) drinks b) don't drink c) aren't drink d) drinking
6. What sport like? ٣٠٢٨ الدقهلية
 a) you don't b) don't you c) doesn't you d) you doesn't
7. I don't to music. ٣٠٢٩ المليونية
 a) listens b) listen c) listening d) listened
8. Adel at home now? ٣٠٣٠ الشرطة
 a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Has
9. Samy go to school on Saturdays. ٣٠٣١ دمياط
 a) don't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) isn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I doesn't usually listen to pop music. (.....) ٣٠٣٢ الفيوم
2. Monkeys makes a lot of noise. (.....) ٣٠٣٣ المليونية
3. What subject does he studied? (.....) ٣٠٣٤ القاهرة
4. What do her hobbies? (.....) ٣٠٣٥ الشرطة
5. I has my breakfast at school. (.....) ٣٠٣٦ الاسكندرية
6. Are you speak English well? (.....) ٣٠٣٧ لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن المهوايات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



عند سؤال شخص عما إذا كان يمارس هواية أم لا نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do you listen to music?

هل تسمع إلى الموسيقى؟

No, I don't.

لا.

Where does your father work?

أين يعمل والدك؟

He works in a bank in Cairo.

يعمل في بنك بالقاهرة.

How long does it take you to come to school?

ما طول المدة التي تستغرقها لك تأتى إلى المدرسة؟

It takes about 30 minutes.

حوالي ٣٠ دقيقة.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ★ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► Noha is asking Soha about her day.

الساعة ٢٣ - ٢٤

Noha: Hello, Soha. How are you?

Soha : (1).....

Noha : (2).....?

Soha : I get up at 6 a.m.

Noha : (3).....?

Soha : I go to school by bus.

Noha : What do you do on Fridays?

Soha : (4).....

Noha : Do you enjoy your time?

Soha : (5).....



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write about a member of your family

- My (..... 's) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العمر) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).
- His hobbies are (الهوايات).

Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least 10 sentences.

- يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على عشر جمل على الأقل

Example

My grandfather

My name is Omar. I'm twelve years old. I have a big family. My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. He grows apples. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much because he is friendly and kind. He always helps me and the other members of the family. We usually visit him at the weekend. He tells us interesting stories. He helps us grow different plants on his farm. I'm really proud of him.

2. How to write about your hobby

كيفية الكتابة عن هوايتك

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

Example

The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies to do in life. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it with my friends at home. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes, I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 1**Lessons
(3 & 4)

17.5

١٧.٥

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. I live with my family in Giza. I have one sister. She is a student at preparatory school. She goes to school at 8:00 a.m. and returns home at 3:00 p.m. My father is an accountant. He works for a big company. He gets up very early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. My mother is a teacher. She teaches geography. I get up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I stay at home with my grandmother. I would like to be six to go to school and meet my friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about?
2. Where does Amgad's father work?
3. Why do you think Amgad doesn't get up early?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The family lives in
 a) the countryside b) a city c) a village d) the desert
5. The underlined word "She" refers to Amgad's
 a) teacher b) sister c) grandmother d) mother
6. Amgad wants to be six to go to
 a) school b) home c) a company d) a farm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is a room at the top of the house.
 a) kitchen b) break c) attic d) garage
2. A/An is a child with no father or mother.
 a) twin b) orphan c) driver d) happy
3. When the weather is hot, we go to the
 a) beach b) desert c) moon d) sun
4. Mona is not making a video , but she is talking to her friend.
 a) cell b) call c) photo d) line
5. My uncle travelled to a lot of countries like England and
 a) Rome b) France c) London d) Paris
6. It's an adventure to a mountain.
 a) climb b) do c) go d) walk

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

١. Does you listen to music every day? (.....) المتفقة ٢٣٠

٢. Does Sama has a blue dress? (.....)

٣. He doesn't plays tennis. (.....)

٤. I am not very good in drawing. (.....) القاهرة ٢٣٠

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

“Your father”



Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words:

مجاناً على [كتاب المعرفة](#)

- 1** Do you ready for the concert? (.....)

2 What sport are you good? (.....)

3 Adel has a car, so he goes to work by bus. (.....)

4 A: Is Salma happy? B: No, she isn't sad. (.....)

STUDY



Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9-11 | WB pages 76 - 78

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| athlete (n) | لاعب رياضي | gymnastics (n) | الألعاب الجمباز |
| athletics (n) | ألعاب القوى | Olympics (n) | الألعاب الأوليمبية |
| balance (d) (v) | يوازن | the country (n) | الريف |
| best friend | أفضل صديق | top (n/adj) | أفضل/أول |
| gymnast (n) | لاعب/لاعبة جمباز | train (for) (ed) (v) | يتدرّب (لعدة) |

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| busy life | حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة | physics (n) | الفيزياء |
| description (n) | وصف | swimming pool (n) | حوض السباحة |
| nearby (adj/adv) | مجاور | work (ed) (v) hard | يعمل بجد |

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: best – gymnastics – physics

- 1 I like It's my favourite subject.
- 2 Adel is my friend. He's a lot of fun.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| achieve > dreams | يتحقق أحلاماً | have > food/a drink | يتناول طعاماً/شراباً |
| find > difficult | يجد صعوبة | stay > strong | يبقى قوياً |

العبارات اللغوية

Prepositions

| | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|-----------|
| a photo of | صورة لـ | move to | ينتقل إلى |
|------------|---------|---------|-----------|

حروف الجر

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|---------|--------|--------------------|---------|
| healthy | صحي | unhealthy | غير صحي |
| strong | قوى | weak | ضعيف |

الكلمات وعكسها

Choose and complete: **weak – strong – of**

- 1 That's a photo my best friend.
- 2 The lion is a animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحرف الجر.

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً
لأنها موضوع أسللة امتحانية.

Language Notes

- 1** so that + can/could + inf.
- Habiba **eats** healthy food **so that** she **can** stay strong.
 - I **went** to England **so that** I **could** learn English.
- 2** physics/ mathematics/ gymnastics/ athletics
- بعض الكلمات التي تنتهي ب (ics) هي أسماء مفردة
- Gymnastics** is a difficult sport.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة
والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|---------|--------|-------------------|-----------|
| healthy | صحي | well | بصحة جيدة |
| strong | قوى | powerful | قوى |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|-------------|-------------|--------|---------|------------------|---------|----------------|----------------|
| athlete (n) | لاعب رياضي | -ics | | تحويل اسم الفاعل | | athletics (n) | ألعاب القوى |
| gymnast (n) | لاعبة جمباز | | | اسم | | gymnastics (n) | ألعاب الجمباز |

Prefix البداءة

| Prefix | البداءة | Function | الوظيفة | Word | الكلمة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|---------|--------|--------------|----------------|
| un- | | تعطى عكس المعنى | | healthy | صحي | unhealthy | غير صحي |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك
الفرق بين الكلمات
المتشابهة في الهجاء
ولكن مختلفة في
المعنى

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|--------|--------|--------------|-----------------|
| weak | ضعف | week | أسبوع |
| dreams | أحلام | drums | طبول |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep fit?

Lesson 6

 Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? **SB page 10**

Habiba Marzouk achieves⁽¹⁾ her dreams⁽²⁾

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**⁽³⁾. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains**⁽⁴⁾ for five or six hours. She is a **top**⁽⁵⁾ gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the **Olympics**⁽⁶⁾.



يحقق / ينجذب (1)

أحلام (2)

لعبة جمباز (3)

يتدرّب (4)

أفضل / أول (5)

الألعاب الأوليمبية (6)

ألعاب الجمباز (7)

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. **Gymnastics**⁽⁷⁾ is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.

Note :

تعلم كيفية تطبيق الكلمات التالية:

gymnast /dʒɪmnæst/ gymnastics /dʒɪmnæstɪks/ Olympics /ə'lɪmpɪks/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Habiba is happy?

Read and punctuate.

My name is **Omar**. **Nabila** is my sister. She lives with me and my family in **Damietta**. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on **Saturday** and **Sunday**. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is **Nabila**? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

WB Page 77



Pre-reading question:

Lesson 7

- What's your best friend's name?

 Read and complete the text about Ali's sister Lamia.

SB page 11



My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live** in Aswan with my family. My parents **are** teachers. My brother Ali **is** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I **listen** to music with **my** brothers. Ali **plays** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We **play** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. **Our** team is very good!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Lamia lives a healthy life? Why/Why not?

 Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

WB Page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. **Their** sister is called Radwa. **Her** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with **my** brother and **his** name is Sayed. **Our** house is in Cairo. What is **your** best friend's name?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba Marzouk is a famous
a) gymnastic b) gymnastics c) gym d) gymnast
2. A baby bird is very It can't fly for many days.
a) poor b) weak c) week d) strong
3. Fresh food is good for you and it is
a) unhealthy b) bad c) healthy d) deadly
4. Habiba Marzouk wants to her dreams and go to the Olympics.
a) give b) play c) check d) achieve
5. Habiba eats well because is a difficult sport.
a) gym b) gymnastics c) gymnast d) gymnasium
6. Ahmed has a very life. He goes to school and studies hard all the time.
a) ugly b) free c) busy d) dirty
7. Athletes work hard to their studies and their sport.
a) bring b) spell c) destroy d) balance
8. As a gymnast, she for 5 or 6 hours daily.
a) trains b) teaches c) studies d) swims
9. Eating healthy food helps us to strong.
a) find b) stay c) achieve d) move
10. We usually have when we sleep.
a) habits b) hobbies c) drums d) dreams
11. I like to live in the because it's quiet.
a) country b) city c) town d) attic
12. She is a top gymnast and she wants to go to the
a) physics b) athletics c) Olympics d) gymnastics
13. My father always a drink after dinner.
a) eats b) has c) trains d) moves

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطالب من حل أسلحة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



What's his/her name?

ما اسمه/ اسمها؟

My best friend's name is).

اسم صديقى/ صديقتي المفضلة هو (.....)



How old is he/she?

كم عمره/ عمرها؟

He's/She's (العدد) years old.

عمره/ عمرها عاماً.



Where does he/she live?

أين يعيش/ تعيش؟

He/She lives in (المكان).

يعيش/ تعيش في



What are his/her hobbies?

ما هواياته/ هواياتها؟

His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات). .



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

٢٣ - ٢٤ الصفحة

► Ahmed is asking Omar about his best friend.

Ahmed : What is your best friend's name?

Omar : (1)..... .

Ahmed : Fares! (2)..... ?

Omar : He's 14 years old.

Ahmed : What does he like?

Omar : (3)..... .

Ahmed : Sports! (4)..... ?

Omar : His favourite sport is football.

Ahmed : Is he friendly and kind?

Omar : (5)..... .

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 1**Lessons
(5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:**Ali asks Hani about his best friend.****Ali :** Who is your best friend, Hani?**Hani :** (1).....**Ali :** (2).....?**Hani :** He is 13. He is in the same classroom.**Ali :** What are his hobbies?**Hani :** (3).....**Ali :** (4).....?**Hani :** His favourite sport is basketball.**Ali :** Is he tall?**Hani :** (5).....**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Good students work hard to their dreams in life. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) forget b) watch c) fail d) achieve
2. I eat healthy food to stay القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) weak b) strong c) unhealthy d) poor
3. It's to eat fruit and vegetables. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) warm b) dirty c) unhealthy d) healthy
4. Athletes work hard to their studies, work and families. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) practise b) train c) balance d) achieve
5. My sister likes sports. She's a famous الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
a) gymnast b) charger c) orphan d) jungle
6. The athlete is hard to be in the next Olympics. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) using b) raining c) travelling d) training
7. She has a very busy She goes to school and studies hard.
a) live b) life c) alive d) leaf

8. What he like doing when he is at home?

- a) do b) does c) is d) are

9. My grandparents in the city. They live in the country.

- a) doesn't live b) don't live c) lives d) live

10. London in England.

- a)** is **b)** am **c)** are **d)** be

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where do your grandfather live? (.....)

2. Can you help my with the homework? (.....)

3. Do you busy today? (.....)

4. Ghada like healthy food. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend and why you like him/ her"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً على [كتاب المعرفة](#)

1 Famous people always a very busy life.

- a) move b) find c) stay d) have

2 Some girls it difficult to play football.

- a) do b) have c) find d) make

3 We usually visit our grandparents Sunday evenings.

- a) in b) on c) at d) for

Review on Unit 1

Language

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| achieve (d) | يتحقق / ينجذب | Subject pronouns | بيانات الفاعل |
| gymnastics | الألعاب الجمباز | I / We / You / He / She / It / They | السؤال والإجابة عن المهن والرياضات |
| adventure | مغامرة | - They go to school by bus. | |
| interview | مقابلة / حوار | | |
| aged | بلف من الصغر | | |
| mountain | جبل | | |
| athlete | لاعب رياضي / قوي | | |
| Olympics | الأبطال الأولمبية | | |
| attic | علية المنزل / السندريلا | | |
| orphan | يتيم | Possessive pronouns | بيانات الماليكية |
| balance (d) | يزور | mine / ours / yours / his / hers / theirs | |
| band | فرقة موسيقية | - This school is theirs . | |
| twin | توأم | | |
| gymnast | لاعب / لاعبة جمباز | Affirmative: | |
| voluntary work | عمل تطوعي | • They play football. • He plays football. | |
| daughter | ابنة | Negative: | |
| great-grandparents | أجداد الأجداد | • They don't play football. • He doesn't play football. | |
| great-grandchildren | أبناء الأجداد | Questions: | |
| uncle | عم / خال - زوج العمة / اخواته | • Do they play football? • Does he play football? | |
| parents | الآباء والأمهان | | |
| grandchildren | أحفاد | | |

Skills

Ask and answer questions

about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن المهن والرياضات

A: Do you listen to music?

B: No, I don't.

A: Where does your father work?

B: He works in a bank in Cairo.

A: How long does it take you to come to school?

B: It takes about 30 minutes.

Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

A: What's his/her name?

B: My best friend's name is

A: How old is he/she?

B: He's / She's years old.

A: Where does he/she live?

B: He / She lives in

A: What are his/her hobbies?

B: His / Her hobbies are

- Do they play football?
- Does he play football?

أحفاد

أجداد

آباء

أجداد

أمهات

أجداد



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Heidi lives with her grandfather because she is

| | |
|--------------|-----------|
| a) ill | b) tall |
| c) an orphan | d) pretty |

2. Heidi's grandfather lives in a

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| a) big house | b) small house |
| c) flat | d) villa |

3. Heidi sleeps in/on the

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| a) attic | b) bathroom |
| c) ground | d) living room |

4. Heidi drinks

| | |
|-----------|---------|
| a) coffee | b) tea |
| c) juice | d) milk |



Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Sami are talking about hobbies.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions?

Sami : (1).....

Ali : Do you have any hobbies?

Sami : (2)..... . I like sports.

Ali : (3)..... ?

Sami : My favourite sport is football.

Ali : (4)..... ?

Sami : I play football on Fridays and Saturdays. What about you?

Ali : (5).....

Sami : Great! Let's play together.

C**Reading Comprehension****3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

My name is Salim. I'm thirteen years old. My best friend is called Salah. He and I study together. His home is only a ten-minute walk from my place. He is funny and friendly. We are always happy to be with each other. He is always kind and helpful to me. When I don't go to school because I'm ill, he comes to my house to ask about me. When he doesn't come to school, I ask about him. We also play football together on Fridays. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.
-

2. Why do you think Salim likes Salah?
-

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to?
-

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Salim and Salah are

a) sisters b) brothers c) students d) teachers

5. The underlined word "friendly" means

a) strong b) well c) kind d) healthy

6. Salah's house is Salim's house.

a) near b) far c) opposite d) behind

D**Vocabulary and Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. These brothers are the same age. They are

المنوية

a) cousins b) sisters c) twins

d) parents

2. Your dad's brother is your

المنوية

a) uncle b) aunt c) sister

d) brother

3. People do work without getting money.

الجبرة

a) voluntary b) business c) group

d) job

4. Every day, Heidi walks in the with the goats.
 a) airports b) mountains c) schools d) pools
5. She is a/an girl. She lost her father.
 a) busy b) orphan c) ugly d) happy
6. Murad works hard to his dreams.
 a) achieve b) archive c) receive d) believe
7. I a lot to play the guitar well.
 a) take b) sleep c) achieve d) train
8. A: Which house is yours? B: is next door.
 a) Yours b) My c) Ours d) Their
9. Basel doesn't the piano. He plays the flute.
 a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
10. Amira with her family in Damietta.
 a) to live b) living c) lives d) live

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adel can't find him book. (بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣)
2. The girl like her teacher so much. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
3. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
4. What sport do you good at? ()



Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite hobby"



Assess your
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

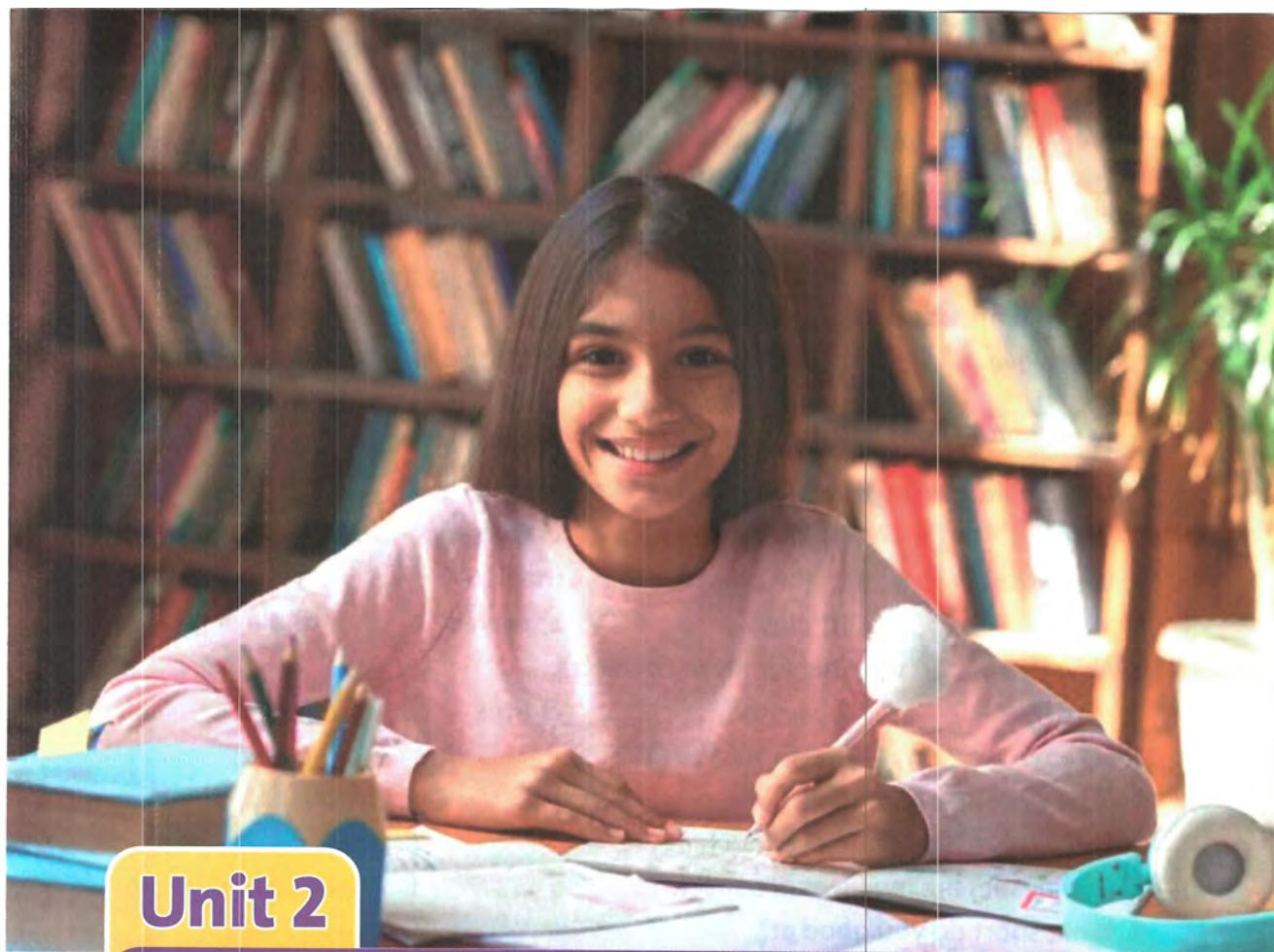
Practice more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



Unit 2

It's my favourite subject

Objectives of the unit

Reading Descriptions of schools around the world

Tapescripts



Writing A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life

Listening A discussion about timetables

Speaking Asking and answering about school and timetables

Language Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'

Life Skills Critical thinking; self-management

تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB

STUDY



Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملاحق التقويم وتقسيم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| bell (n) | جرس | library (n) | مكتبة (للقراءة) |
| daily life | الحياة اليومية | playground (n) | ملعب |
| far away | بعيداً | timetable (n) | جدول الحصص |
| hall (n) | صالة/قاعة | typical (adj) | معتاد/نموذج/مثالي |
| head teacher (n) | مدير المدرسة | weekend (n) | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |

| المفردات الرئيسية | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| المواد الدراسية | | | |
| Arabic (n) | اللغة العربية | maths (n) | الرياضيات |
| art (n) | التربية الفنية/الرسم | music (n) | التربية الموسيقية |
| computer studies (n) | دراسات الحاسوب | religion (n) | الدين |
| drama (n) | الدراما (أدب المسرحيات) | science (n) | العلوم |
| English (n) | اللغة الإنجليزية | social studies (n) | الدراسات الاجتماعية |
| home economics (n) | الاقتصاد المنزلي | | |

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------|---------------------------|------------|
| different (adj) | مختلف | road (n) | طريق |
| half past | ونصف | student (n) | طالب |
| quarter past | وربع | study (y <i>ied</i>) (v) | يدرس/يذاكر |
| quarter to | إلا ربع | trip (n) | رحلة |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

sport – subject – library

1 We read books in the school

2 My favourite is science.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

It's my favourite subject 53

Language Expressions

العبارات اللغوية

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| do > homework | يؤدي الواجب المنزلي | have > a lesson | لديه حصة |
| get > home | يصل إلى البيت | breakfast | يتناول الإفطار |
| live > in Nairobi | يعيش في مدينة نيروبي | take > a long time | يسنفرق وقتاً طويلاً |

Prepositions

حروف الجر

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------------------|------------------|
| at break | في الفسحة | It's time for ... | حان الوقت لـ ... |
| get to | يصل إلى | ways of | طرق لـ |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

do - at - for - have

- 1 I play with my friends break.
- 2 I my homework in the evening.
- 3 I my breakfast with my friends at school.

يمهد هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للعبارات اللغوية
وحرروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | P.P. | Present | Past simple | P.P. |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|---------------|-------------|-------|
| choose يختار | chose | chosen | mean يعني | meant | meant |
| get up ينحضر/يسقط | got up | got up | ring يرن/يدق | rang | rung |
| hear يسمع | heard | heard | have لديه/عنه | had | had |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عکسها |
|----------------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------|
| different مختلف | the same | | نفس الشيء |
| far away بعيداً | near | | قريب |
| start يبدأ | finish | | ينهى |
| typical معتاد/نموذجى/مثالي | unusual | | غير معتاد |

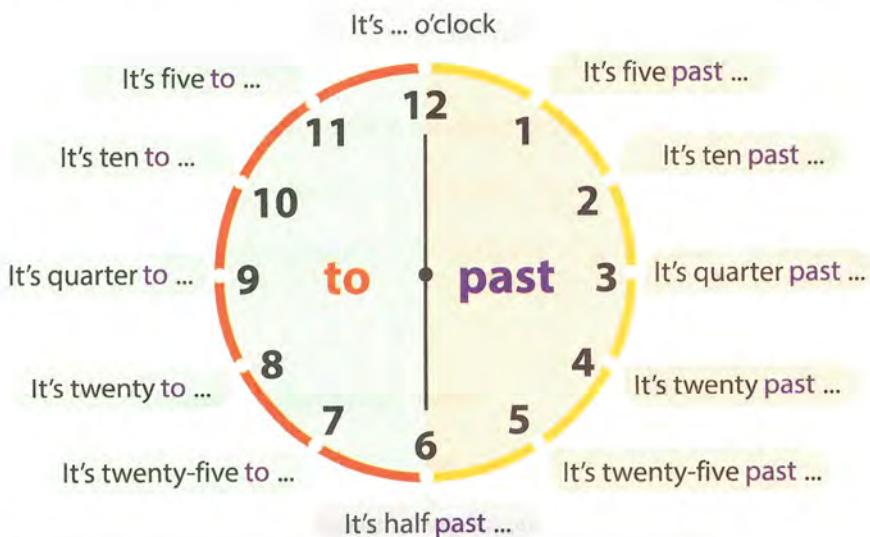
Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



طريق الاخبار عن الوقت:

1 Ways to tell/say the time:



2 computer studies – home economics – social studies – physics

- المواد الدراسية تعامل معاملة المفرد -

- Social studies **is** my favourite subject.
- Home economics **starts** at ten thirty on Sunday.

3 drive + شخص

يوصل شخصاً بالسيارة

- My father always drives me to school.

4 first / then / second / next

التالي/بعد ذلك أو ثم / ثم / الثاني

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة عند سرد أحداث أو رواية قصة

- First, I visited my grandmother.
- Then, I met my friends in the club.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1** Physics my favourite subject.
 a) am b) is c) are d) does
- 2** My mum has a meeting at past nine next Sunday.
 a) half b) have c) halve d) quieter
- 3** To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix ".....".
 a) im- b) a- c) in- d) un-

Check Point

Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثراي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



Definitions

| | | |
|------------|-----------------|--|
| bell | جرس | it rings when ⁽¹⁾ a lesson starts and finishes |
| hall | قاعة/صالة | it is a big room for a lot of students ⁽²⁾ and teachers |
| library | مكتبة (للقراءة) | you can find a lot of ⁽³⁾ books here |
| playground | ملعب | it is in a school. You play games here |

التعريفات

- (1) عندما
 (2) الطلاب
 (3) كثير من

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|---------|--------------------|-------------------|---------|
| start | يبدأ | begin | يبدأ |
| typical | نمودجي/مثالي/معتاد | usual | معتاد |

الكلمات ومرادفها

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|------------|-----------|--------|---------|----------------------|---------|-----------------|----------------|
| differ (v) | يختلف | -ent | | تحول الفعل لصفة | | different (adj) | مختلف |
| teach (v) | يدرس/يعلم | -er | | تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل | | teacher (n) | مدرس |

Prefix البدائية

| Prefix | البدائية | Function | الوظيفة | Word | الكلمة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------|----------|-----------------|---------|-------------|--------|---------------|----------------|
| un- | | تعطى عكس المعنى | | usual (adj) | معتاد | unusual (adj) | غير معتاد |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|
| bell | جرس | bill | فاتورة |
| hall | قاعة/صالة | hill | تل |
| past | و | paste | معجون |

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المهجاء ولكن محلème من المعنى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What do you like most about your school?

Listen and complete the timetable.

Amal I like the new timetable⁽¹⁾. What's your favourite day, Injy?

Injy I like Thursday. We have Social Studies⁽²⁾ first on Thursday. Then we have English⁽³⁾ and then we go to Science⁽⁴⁾. That's my favourite subject.

Amal My favourite day's today. We have Maths⁽⁵⁾ first and second lesson after break today. I love Maths! Then we have Science and Art⁽⁶⁾.

Injy I like Art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

Amal English, then Religion⁽⁷⁾ is next, then Arabic⁽⁸⁾ and then Home Economics⁽⁹⁾. After break, we have Social Studies. Then we have Science and Computer Studies⁽¹⁰⁾. Finally, we have Music⁽¹¹⁾.

Injy When do we have Drama⁽¹²⁾?

Amal That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

social /soʊʃəl/ economics /i:kənɒmɪks/ religion /rɪlɪdʒən/

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What's Injy's favourite subject?
- 2 Do you think Injy and Amal like Drama? Why?

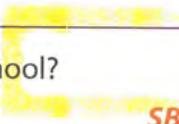
Lesson 1

SB page 13

- | |
|-------------------------|
| جدول الحصص (1) |
| الدراسات الاجتماعية (2) |
| اللغة الانجليزية (3) |
| العلوم (4) |
| الرياضيات (5) |
| الرسم (6) |
| الدين (7) |
| اللغة العربية (8) |
| الاقتصاد المنزلي (9) |
| دراسات الكمبيوتر (10) |
| الموسيقى (11) |
| الدراما (12) |

Pre-reading question: - How long does it take to go to school?

 Read the text again and answer the questions.

 SB page 14

Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical ⁽¹⁾ day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away ⁽²⁾, so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell ⁽³⁾ at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall ⁽⁴⁾. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground ⁽⁵⁾, but sometimes we go to the library ⁽⁶⁾ to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Nairobi /nə'rəʊbi/ typical /tɪpɪkəl/

Post-reading question:

- How do you think Akeyo feels when she returns home?

(1) نموذجي/ صالح

(2) بعيداً جداً

(3) درس

(4) صالة/ قاعة

(5) ملعب (فناء المدرسة)

(6) مكتبة (القراءة)



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is the subject of how to learn numbers. ٢٠٢٢ الشرقية
 a) Art b) Maths c) Arabic d) Music
2. My son is good at He can draw pictures. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
 a) English b) Arabic c) Maths d) Art
3. We use a mouse in lessons. ٢٠٢٢ الفيوم
 a) Arabic b) art c) maths d) computer studies
4. We learn about countries in lessons. ٢٠٢٢ الفيوم
 a) social studies b) religion c) maths d) computer studies
5. The opposite of "the same" is ".....". ٢٠٢٣ القليوبية
 a) similar b) different c) equal d) alike
6. For homework, we often read books from the WB
 a) laboratory b) library c) playground d) hall
7. I usually get up at half six.
 a) past b) post c) paste d) to
8. I Arabic and English on Sunday.
 a) go b) make c) have d) stay
9. I go to school library at ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
 a) break b) brake c) park d) bark
10. On a weekend, Omar reads books at the club library. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
 a) hard b) musical c) bad d) typical
11. We learn about food in home الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
 a) studies b) economics c) gymnastics d) physics
12. We have eight on a school day.
 a) lessons b) numbers c) languages d) bells
13. All the children in our school go to the when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB
 a) bell b) hall c) library d) playground

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school
a) objects b) subjects c) teams d) groups الفيوم ٢٣٠
2. At break, I play games with my friend in the
a) hall b) classroom c) playground d) office بور سعيد ٢٣٠
3. You can look at the to know how many lessons you'll have today.
a) desk b) chair c) timetable d) bag
4. What's your subject?
a) favourite b) favour c) fat d) heavy القاهرة ٢٣٠
5. I'm not very good English.
a) in b) at c) on d) of
6. is an interesting subject.
a) English b) Gym c) Volleyball d) Handball
7. I usually my homework before I sleep.
a) say b) give c) make d) do
8. It's half seven. It's time for school.
a) past b) pass c) to d) too القديم ٢٣٠
9. She's great at She likes art.
a) watching b) playing c) swimming d) drawing القاهرة ٢٣٠
10. We study people and how they live in the lessons.
a) science b) social studies c) maths d) drama الجيزة ٢٣٠
11. I usually lunch at home with my family.
a) do b) get c) have d) make
12. We have English first on Monday. we have Arabic.
a) Last b) Past c) Then d) After
13. A is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.
a) hill b) hall c) bell d) hole

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار



Usage & Form: التكوين والاستخدام:

They're used to say how often we do things, or how often things happen.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، ونستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط. نفع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي كالتالي:

Subject + **adv.** + inf./verb + s, es, ies

Ex: • We **usually** play football on Mondays.

• Amr **sometimes** goes to school by bus.

• I **always** walk to school. • Sally **never** gets up late.

للحظ

١- يمكن استخدام sometimes أول الجملة أي قبل الفاعل.

• Sometimes, we go to the library to read books.

٢- مع (verb to be) يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كالتالي:

Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** + adj. (صفة)

• They are **usually** late.

• Mona is **always** clever.

٣- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة) (How often) كالتالي:

How often

+

do > (you – we – they – اسم جمع)

+ inf. + ...?

does > (he – she – it – اسم مفرد)

• A: How often do Akeyo and her brother walk to school? B: They never walk to school.



Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Students go never to school on Fridays.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (never go) لأن ظرف التكرار يسبق الفعل الرئيسي للجملة.

It's my favourite subject 61

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجدول الحصص

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



What's your favourite subject?

ما هي مادتك المفضلة؟

I like maths./My favourite subject is social studies.

أحب الرياضيات/مادتي المفضلة هي الدراسات الاجتماعية.



How many lessons do you have every day?

كم عدد حصصك التي لديك يومياً؟



I have seven lessons every day.

لدي سبع حصص يومياً.



Are you good at maths?

هل أنت جيد في الرياضيات؟

نعم.



What time is the break?

متى تكون الفسحة؟



It's at eleven o'clock.

في الحادية عشرة تماماً.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

٢٠٢٢ القليوبية

► Judy is asking Jana about her favourite subject.

Judy : How are you, Jana?

Jana : (1).....

Judy : What's your favourite subject?

Jana : (2).....

Judy : Are you good at science?

Jana : (3).....

Judy : (4).....?

Jana : Science lesson starts after break on Sunday.

Judy : (5).....?

Jana : It finishes at twelve o'clock.



2. Write it right

How to write about your day/daily life

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تفعيل الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



- My name's (الاسم).
 - I go to a preparatory school in (المكان).
 - I usually get up at (الساعة).
 - I often (فعل) in the morning.
 - I always (فعل) after school.
 - I usually (فعل) with my friends.
 - We sometimes go out in the evening.
 - I never (فعل) on school days.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence.
 - supporting sentences.
 - a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:

- جملة رئيسية.

- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.

- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

→ Example

My daily life

My name's Bassem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your day"

My name's

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 2**Lessons
(1 & 2)

17

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**
1. What is your mother's job?
 a) A nurse. b) A doctor. c) A teacher. d) A cook.
 2. How often do you go shopping?
 a) Often. b) Always.
 c) Sometimes. d) Never.
 3. How often does your dad work at the weekend?
 a) Never. b) Always. c) Often. d) Sometimes.
 4. What does your dad work with?
 a) Mobiles. b) Televisions. c) Tablets. d) Computers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bell when a lesson starts and finishes.
 a) gets b) means c) hears d) rings
2. It's half seven. It's time for school.
 a) past b) pass c) to d) too
3. Mostafa loves art at school.
 a) eating b) playing c) doing d) buying
4. school days, I get up at half past six.
 a) On b) At c) In d) Of
5. I usually breakfast with my family.
 a) drink b) do c) have d) tell
6. My dad always us to school.
 a) has b) chooses c) arrives d) drives
7. The road is always busy, so it a long time to get there.
 a) has b) takes c) does d) makes
8. Amira her homework after dinner.
 a) does never b) never is c) is never d) never does

الفيوم، ٢٠١٣

المنى، ٢٠١٣

9. A: do you go out for lunch? **B:** I sometimes go out for lunch.

- a) How many b) How tall c) How often d) How long

10. I get up late on holidays.

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They often went to the theatre in summer. (.....)

2. Does you usually get up early? (.....)

3. My aunt does always the shopping on Friday. (.....)

4. They play in the club every day. They never go to the club. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your school day"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً عن نهاية الكتاب

- 1 We have maths break.

- a) in b) during c) at d) after

- 2** Hala her make-up in the morning.

- a) never does b) is never c) never is d) does never

- 3**, Toka comes to school late.

- a) Never b) Always c) Sometimes d) When

STUDY

Watch a video

**Lessons 3 & 4**

SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 81 & 82

A Vocabulary**Key Vocabulary****المفردات الرئيسية**

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|---------|
| notebook (n) | كراسة/دفتر | rules (n) | قواعد |
| pencil case (n) | مقلمة | uniform (n) | زي موحد |

Means/Forms of transport وسائل النقل

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| boat (n) | قارب | motorbike (n) | دراجة بخارية |
| canoe (n) | زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو | snowmobile (n) | عربة الثلج |
| helicopter (n) | هليكوبتر (طائرة عمودية) | train (n) | قطار |

Additional Vocabulary**المفردات الإضافية**

| | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------|----------|
| camel (n) | جمل | road (n) | طريق |
| cap (n) | قبعة/كاب | shoes (n) | حذاء |
| football shirt (n) | قميص كرة القدم | snow (n) | جليد/ثلج |
| fun (n) | مرح/متعة | village (n) | قرية |
| office (n) | حجرة المكتب | winter (n) | الشتاء |

Check Point**Choose and complete:** boat – summer – camel – winter

- 1 The is a desert animal.
- 2 We cross the river using a
- 3 It's very cold in

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
المفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعابيرات اللغوية

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| do > homework | يؤدي الواجب المنزلي | say > unkind things | يقول أشياء غير طيبة |
| follow > school rules | يتبع القواعد المدرسية | take > a journey | يقوم برحلة سفر |

Prepositions

حروف الجر

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| cycle to | يركب الدراجة إلى | on the other side of | على الجانب الآخر من |
| in a canoe | في الزورق | on the right | على اليمين |
| on a snowmobile | في عربة الثلج | on time | في الوقت المحدد |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

on – do – say – to

- 1 I cycle school every day.
- 2 We never unkind things to our classmates.
- 3 Hany should go to school time.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعابيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | | Past simple | | Past participle |
|---------|-------|-------------|--|-----------------|
| forget | ينسى | forgot | | forgotten |
| wear | يرتدى | wore | | worn |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|-----------|------------|--------------------|-------------|
| cheap | رخيص الثمن | expensive | غالي الثمن |
| dangerous | خطير | safe | آمن |
| forget | ينسى | remember | يتذكر |
| kind | طيب | unkind | غير طيب |
| outside | خارج | inside | داخل |
| wear | يرتدى | take off | يخلع ملابسه |

Pre-reading question:

- Is your journey to school difficult or easy?

Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school.

They do not go to school by car⁽¹⁾, bus⁽²⁾ or train⁽³⁾.

| | |
|------------|------------------|
| عربة (1) | بركب الدراجة (4) |
| أتوبيس (2) | زورق (5) |
| قطار (3) | عربة الثلاج (6) |

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle⁽⁴⁾ to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.



2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe⁽⁵⁾. The canoe takes the children to school and back home again every day.



3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile⁽⁶⁾!



Note:

Uganda /ju:'gændə/
canoe /kənu:/

village /vɪlɪdʒ/
snowmobile/snoʊməbi:l/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

cycle /saɪkəl/

Post-reading question:

- Mention three ways children use to go to school.

- How do you go to school?

 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

SB page 18

Narrator 2 : 1

Narrator Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel.

(1) زورق

(2) عربة تاج

Boy When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

Narrator 2 : 2

Narrator These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe⁽¹⁾. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.

Narrator 2 : 3

Narrator This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow.

The children travel to school on a snowmobile⁽²⁾!

Boy It's cold, but it's fast—and fun!

Post-listening questions:

- 1 If you were a student in the USA, how would you find travelling to school on a snowmobile?
- 2 When the roads are busy, which is faster, a bus or a bike?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People travel on a when there is snow. ٢٠٢٣ الفريبيه
a) foot b) bike c) canoe d) snowmobile
2. Camels are very They can carry 200 kilos of bags. ٢٠٢٣ الشرقية
a) weak b) low c) strong d) poor
3. My aunt is very She always gives me big presents. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
a) sad b) kind c) unkind d) poor
4. Some children in Egypt to school. Bikes are fantastic. ٢٠٢٣ الشرقية
a) cycle b) play c) meet d) drive
5. The canoe children to school and home again every day. ٢٠٢٣ الاسكندرية
a) drives b) rides c) takes d) cycles
6. Cars, buses, planes and trains are means of ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
a) report b) airport c) port d) transport
7. We should our school uniform during the school day. ٢٠٢٣
a) forget b) wear c) help d) say
8. Students should their homework every day. ٢٠٢٣
a) do b) follow c) put d) say
9. Some students go to school a canoe. ٢٠٢٣ القليوبية
a) by b) on c) in d) at
10. The children in the USA to school on a snowmobile. WB
a) cycle b) take c) ride d) travel
11. My mother gave me a red to put my pens in. ٢٠٢٣
a) ruler b) pencil case c) notebook d) timetable
12. We always school rules. ٢٠٢٣ الاسكندرية
a) finish b) fill c) fail d) follow
13. He doesn't want to help his friends. He is
a) clever b) busy c) unkind d) kind

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Riding bikes is a/an way to travel.
 a) kind b) unkind c) unhealthy d) healthy
2. We arrived Luxor two days ago.
 a) in b) at c) on d) with
3. They are polite. They never unkind things to their friends.
 a) say b) talk c) laugh d) listen
4. The opposite of "expensive" is " ".
 a) unhealthy b) busy c) cheap d) unkind
5. He lives in a small away from the city.
 a) village b) country c) lake d) snow
6. A takes people from one side of a lake to another.
 a) bike b) canoe c) snowmobile d) car
7. My school is the other side of the lake.
 a) from b) in c) at d) on
8. A canoe is a kind of a that goes on water.
 a) taxi b) snowmobile c) boat d) tram
9. I on my school uniform at 7 a.m.
 a) have b) talk c) take d) put
10. When the roads are , the bus is slow.
 a) strong b) expensive c) busy d) cheap
11. They usually to school. They go on foot.
 a) walk b) cycle c) drive d) fly
12. The opposite of the word "safe" is " ".
 a) false b) different c) dangerous d) expensive
13. School should be followed.
 a) roles b) rulers c) rolls d) rules

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Possessive 's / s'

الملكية ('s / s')

تستخدم ('s) / (s') للتعبير عن ملكية شخص / أشخاص لشيء ما:
نستخدم (s') الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهي بـ (s)

's - It's Adel's book.

- That's my friend's car.

نستخدم (s') الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذي ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم).

- That is not the children's room.

s' - That's the teachers' room.

- This is a girls' school.

نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهي بحرف (s)

- It's Lamees' dress.

يمكن استخدام (') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهي بحرف (s).



١- لا تستخدم (s') مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشيء ما، نضع (s') على الاسم الأخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza's** names on it.

٣- عند إضافة (s') لبعض الوظائف تتتحول إلى أماكن:

baker's /chemist's /butcher's /المخبز /الصيدلية /المeatر

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (ملك من /من) (Whose) كالتالي:

Whose + (object) + is/are ...?

A: Whose shoes are these?

B: They are Ali's shoes.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 My father repaired the laptop's battery.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة (s').

2 Who's book is that?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.

3 This is Ayas' car.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتهي بـ (s).

تمكّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرّف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعاة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. This is phone. It's new.
 a) Ali b) Alis c) Ali's d) Alis'٢٠٢٢ الفريبيه
2. Mr. Samy is in the room.
 a) teachers' b) teacher's c) teachers d) teacher٢٠٢٣ الاسكندرية
3. This is bag.
 a) Ahmeds b) Ahmed's c) Ahmeds' d) Ahmed٢٠٢٣ الدقهليه
4. Those are my books.
 a) children b) childrens' c) children's d) children'٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
5. Her father is called Wael and her name is Samar.
 a) mother b) mothers c) mother's d) mothers'٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
6. A: dresses are these? B: They are Sara's.
 a) Who's b) Whose c) Who d) What٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
7. This car belongs to Ghada. It's car.
 a) Ghada's b) Ghadas' c) Ghadas d) Ghada'٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
8. All students have their books. All the books are on the table.
 a) student's b) students' c) students d) student٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
9. English class starts at ten o'clock.
 a) Thursday b) Thursday's c) Thursdays d) Thursdays's٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
10. Ali broke the leg yesterday.
 a) table b) table's c) tables' d) tables٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. These are my sister shoes. She likes them. (.....)٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
2. My friend name is Rawda. (.....)٢٠٢٢ الشيفيه
3. My sister goes to a girl's school. (.....)٢٠٢٣ القليوب
4. The childrens' clothes are in that bag. (.....)٢٠٢٣ دمياط
5. These are the boys football shirts. They want them. (.....)٢٠٢٢ الشيفيه
6. Nada's and Yara school is very big. (.....)

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. This is drum. He likes music.
 a) Hani' b) Hanis c) Hani's d) Hanis'
2. Hala has got red hair. hair is very long.
 a) Halas b) Hala's c) Halas' d) Hala
3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the door.
 a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car
4. I had to wait in the room till my father finished his work in the hospital.
 a) doctor b) doctor's c) doctors' d) doctors
5. That is not my ball. It is the ball.
 a) childrens' b) childrens's c) children d) children's
6. We buy bread at the
 a) baker's b) bakers c) bakers's d) baker
7. family is from Tanta.
 a) Sara b) Sara's c) Saras' d) Saras
8. A: cap is it? B: It's mine.
 a) What b) Whose c) When d) Who's
9. My mum and dad sleep here. This is my room.
 a) parents' b) parent's c) parents d) parent
10. Chess is my favourite game. It's his hobby.
 a) cousin's b) cousins c) cousin d) cousins'

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. We found Mona bag. (.....) المنوفةية
2. The girl's names are Hanen and Marwa. (.....) المنوفةية
3. A: Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom?
 B: It is on the right. (.....) WB
4. My uncles favourite sport is basketball. (.....) الإسكندرية
5. My cousin's house is over there. I love them. (.....)
6. We can buy meat at the butcher. (.....) القاهرة

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills



Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write about your journey to school

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلتك إلى المدرسة

- My name's (الاسم). (My name's Marwa.)
- I live in (المكان). (I live in Luxor.)
- I go to school with (الأشخاص). (I go to school with my friends.)
- My school is (near/ far from) my house. (My school is far from my house.)
- I travel to school by (الوسيلة). (We travel to school by ferry.)

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء في الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My school journey

My name's Marwa. In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. I'm in preparatory one at school. My school is far from my house, so we never walk to school. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour to arrive at school. The ferry is very nice. We cross the river to get there. It's not an easy journey. The ferry takes us to school and home again every day. I get home at three o'clock. I like my journey to school.

2. How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية

- At the weekend, I go to (المكان). (At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm.)
- We go there by (الوسيلة المواصلات). (We go there by car.)
- We always have a good time. (We always have a good time.)
- I go with (الأشخاص). (I go with my family.)
- We go back home (الوقت). (We go back home after lunch.)

Example

My weekend

My name's Tamer. I live in Cairo with my family. At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm. It's in Giza. I go there with my family. We usually go in my father's car. I like the farm. I help my grandfather plant apples. My brother likes farm animals. He watches them and gives them water. My sister helps my grandmother make lunch. My parents go for a walk to enjoy the green trees there. We always have a good time. It's a lot of fun.

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 2

Lessons
(3 & 4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives **near** his school, so he goes there on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. **His** favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. How often does Nabil go to the school library?
3. What kind of books do you think Nabil likes to read?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | | | | |
|--|---------|-------------------|-----------|------------|
| 4. Nabil likes meeting people. | a) bad | b) clever | c) unkind | d) unhappy |
| 5. The underlined pronoun " His " refers to | a) food | b) Nabil's father | c) Nabil | d) sport |
| 6. The opposite of the word " near " is | a) far | b) close | c) nearby | d) crowded |

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | | | | |
|---|-------------|------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. My school is a white shirt and blue pants. | a) rule | b) uniform | c) form | d) picture |
| 2. The train left Cairo at 7 o'clock and soon we in Giza. | a) walked | b) arrived | c) got | d) went |
| 3. At school, we have many to follow. | a) subjects | b) sports | c) rules | d) rooms |
| 4. We usually cycle school. | a) to | b) at | c) in | d) on |
| 5. There is a nice park the other side of the road. | a) in | b) with | c) on | d) to |
| 6. It's to travel on a snowmobile. I like it very much. | a) fun | b) busy | c) unkind | d) unhealthy |

7. I like to to school, it's healthier and costs no money.

a) swim b) drive c) cycle d) fly

8. Room "1" is the office. His name is Mr Ibrahim.

a) teachers b) teachers' c) teacher d) teacher's

9. brother is a good tennis player.

a) Waleed b) Waleed' c) Waleed's d) Waleeds

10. We buy medicine at the

a) chemist's b) chemists' c) chemists d) chemist

الدورة العلمية ٢٣-٢٤

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1.** A: Who bag is this? B: It's Hadeer's. (.....)
2. Yesterday match was boring. (.....)
3. This is Sandy laptop. (.....)
4. This is a shop for mens clothes. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How children go to school and why"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words:

مجاناً في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 What is today date, Mazin? (.....)

2 The chemist is the place where I buy medicine. (.....)

3 My grandparents' farm is big. He bought it 10 years ago. (.....)

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثباتي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|--|----------------------------|
| an email | رسالة بريد إلكترونی | it is a simple ⁽¹⁾ message sent through ⁽²⁾ the internet | (1) بسيط |
| Arabic | اللغة العربية | it is the language of Arab countries ⁽³⁾ | (2) عبر/خلال |
| art | الرسم | we paint and draw in this lesson | (3) الدول العربية |
| computer studies | دراسات الحاسوب | we use a mouse in this lesson | (4) لغة |
| English | اللغة الإنجليزية | it is the language ⁽⁴⁾ of England | |
| French | اللغة الفرنسية | it is the language of France | |
| maths | الرياضيات | we learn about numbers in this lesson | |

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|----------|--------|-------------------|---------|
| friendly | ودود | kind | طيب |
| true | صحيح | correct/right | صحيح |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|----------------|----------------|
| friend (n) | صديق | -ly | | تحول الاسم لصفة | | friendly (adj) | ودود |

Prefix البداءة

| Prefix | البداءة | Function | الوظيفة | Word | الكلمة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|----------------|--------|------------------|----------------|
| un- | | تعطى عكس المعنى | | friendly (adj) | ودود | unfriendly (adj) | غير ودود |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة | هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى |
|--------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|--|
| quite | إلى حد ما | quiet | هدئ | |
| Arabic | اللغة العربية | Arab | عربي (الجنسية) | |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What is your favourite subject?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Lesson 5

SB page 19



Leila There's the bell!

Aya What subject have we got next?

Leila Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall.

Hooray!

Aya Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies!

Leila I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

اللغات (1)

اللغة الفرنسية (2)

Aya I like science and languages⁽¹⁾.

Leila Are you good at languages?

Aya I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French⁽²⁾.

Leila Who's our English teacher this year?

Aya It's Mrs. Amal.

Leila Oh good. She's really friendly. When have we got English?

Aya It's after break.

Leila What time is break?

Aya It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.

Leila OK!

Post-listening questions:

1 How do you think Aya can improve her English?

2 How is Mrs. Amal?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do after school?

 **Read about Amira. Write the questions a–c in the correct places.**

Lesson 6

SB page 20

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : 1. How old are you, and where are you from?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.

Q : 2. What subjects do you like?

A : This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths.

We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too, but I'm not very good at it!



Q : 3. What do you usually do after school?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed.

What time do you wake up and go to bed?

Post-reading question:

- How often does Amira have computer studies?

 **Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.**

WB page 84



Hi Nagwa,

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. **My father works with computers.** My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. **My brother always plays football when we go there!** He is very good at football. What about you? **What do you do at the weekend?**

Best wishes

Nesma



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What is your subject? B: It's English.

٢٠٢٢ القاهرة

- a) true b) friend c) favourite d) correct

2. is the main language of Arab people.

٢٠٢٢ كفر الشيخ

- a) French b) Spanish c) English d) Arabic

3. I like my teachers. They're very

- a) bad b) unkind c) friendly d) sad

4. I usually a shower after school.

- a) go b) do c) have d) make

5. My mother up early to make our breakfast.

٢٠٢٣ الشروقية

- a) puts b) comes c) forgets d) wakes

6. Which holiday can people do in Egypt?

٢٠٢٢ المنوفية

- a) weeks b) views c) activities d) souvenirs

7. I go to school. I'm in one.

- a) false b) preparatory c) right d) kind

8. A/An is a simple message sent through the internet.

- a) email b) art c) letter d) computer

9. Arabic, English and French are all

٢٠٢٢ الفيوم

- a) meals b) languages c) hobbies d) timetables

10. My mother always shopping on Sundays.

- a) arrives b) gets c) makes d) goes

11. Breakfast, lunch and are daily meals.

٢٠٢٢ القليوبية

- a) dinner b) language c) petrol d) reading

12. My teacher asked us to a project about computers.

- a) do b) make c) have d) come

13. When I home from school, I have something to eat.

- a) take b) give c) have d) come

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد



Speaking

Ask and answer questions about school

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

السؤال والإجابة عن الدراسة
جملة الرد



online



- | | |
|--|---|
| How do you travel to school? | كيف تasper إلى المدرسة؟ |
| I travel to school by bus. | أسافر إلى المدرسة بالأتوبوس. |
| How long does it take? | كم تستغرق الرحلة؟ |
| About ten minutes. | حوالي ١٠ دقائق. |
| Who is our teacher of English this year? | من هو مدرسنا في اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟ |
| Mr Waleed Ali. | الأستاذ وليد علي. |
| When have we got English? | متى موعد حصة اللغة الإنجليزية؟ |
| It's after break. | إنها بعد الفسحة. |
| What time is break? | متى تكون الفسحة؟ |
| It's at quarter past ten. | في العاشرة والربع. |

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

٢٣ - اليوم

Ahmed is asking Mustafa about his favourite subject.

Ahmed : Hi, Mustafa. Can I ask you a few questions about your school?

Mustafa: (1).....

Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?

Mustafa: (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Mustafa: Because English is an interesting subject.

Ahmed : (4).....?

Mustafa: Mr. Omar is my English teacher this year.

Ahmed : How often do you study it?

Mustafa: (5).....

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 2**Lessons
(5 & 6)

15.5

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is asking Amany about school.

Salma : Do you mind if I ask you some questions about school?

Amany : (1).....

Salma : When do you usually wake up on school days?

Amany : (2).....

Salma : (3)..... ?

Amany : I walk to school because it's very close to my house.

Salma : (4)..... ?

Amany : My favourite school subject is English.

Salma : Is there a library in your school?

Amany : (5)..... I go there daily.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What are you good at, Rana? B: English and Italian.

- a) hobbies b) sports c) foods d) languages

2. We always dinner at nine in the evening.

- a) have b) do c) take d) give

3. My best friend lives Giza.

- a) on b) in c) from d) of

4. We paint and draw in lessons.

- a) Arabic b) science c) maths d) art

5. I like my friend Waleed because he is

- a) ugly b) bad c) friendly d) unfriendly

6. I get up at seven, then I my clothes.

- a) look at b) put on c) wake up d) go to

7. Before I go to bed, I take my favourite book and in bed.

- a) read b) come c) go d) have

8. My father asks me not to close the door hard.
a) cars' b) car's c) car is d) car

9. My father always to work by bus.
a) is going b) going c) goes d) go

10. A: dress is this? B: It's mine.
a) Which b) Whose c) When d) What

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: How many do you study English? B: Every day. (.....)

2. What languages are you good for? (.....)

3. My brother's birthday is on Monday. They are twins. (.....)

4. Aya never walk to school. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

٦٠٢

"A typical day in your life"

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مَدَابُ عَنْهُ فِي نَهَايَةِ الْكُتُبِ

- 1** My brother always plays football we go to the park.
a) when b) why c) which d) what

2 I don't like science, but I'm good at it.
a) quite b) not c) never d) hardly

3 Students many activities to do at school.
a) stay b) make c) do d) have

Review on Unit 2

Skills

Ենթագիր

Vocabulary

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| arabifications | درابة بخارية |
| motorbike | مسحة/راحة |
| break | كراسة/دفتر |
| notebook | زوف طول حفظ//الكتنو |
| canoe | دراسات الحاسوب |
| computer studies | الحياة اليومية |
| daily life | ملعب |
| playground | الدراما (أدب المسرحيات) |
| drama | الدين |
| religion | اللغة الإنجليزية |
| English | قواعد |
| rules | عاده مفضله |
| favourite subject | اللغة الفرنسية |
| French | عربة الشح |
| snowmobile | ادراسات الاجتماعيه |
| social studies | جدول الد حصص |
| timetable | لاقتناع الميزان |
| home economics | مودج/مثال |
| typical | فان |
| languages | موحد |
| uniform | من/ملك من |
| Whose ...? | ؟ |

| | |
|--|--|
| (1) Adverbs of frequency: | Asking and answering about school and timetables: |
| always / غالباً / عادةً / usually | A: What's your favourite subject? B: My favourite subject is sociology. |
| Sometimes / أحياناً / never | A: How many lessons do you have every day? B: I have seven lessons every day. |
| نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن حد تكرار فعل ما، وتشتمل مع زمن المضارع البسيط، نعم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأنساق كالآتي: | A: What time is break? B: It's at eleven o'clock. |
| Subject + adv. + verb + inf./verb studies. | A: Who is our teacher of English this year? B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah. |
| + s, es, ies | A: How do you travel to school? B: I travel to school by bus. |
| يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كالتالي: | |
| Subject + am/is/are + adv. (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة) | |
| • Subject + am/is/are + adv. (التأكيدية) ('s / 's': | |
| + adj. (صفة) | |
| • It's Adel's book. | |
| • That is not the children's notebook. | |
| 3 (s): | |
| • That's the teachers' room. | |
| • It's Lamées' dress. | |
| • I repaired my car door. | |
| • I'm not a student (I'm) مع الجماد | |
| عند السؤال عن الماكية نستخدم (Whose): | |
| ملك من/أهون | |
| A: Whose shoes are these? | |
| B: They are Ali's shoes. | |



Al-Adwaa Test

on Unit 2

24

A

Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How is the weather in the USA in winter? نـص الـاستـمـاع فـي نـهاـيـة الـكتـاب
 a) Rainy. b) Sunny. c) Windy. d) Snowy.
2. How do the children go to school there?
 a) By bus. b) By car.
 c) In a canoe. d) On a snowmobile.
3. How is their journey to school?
 a) Fast. b) Fun.
 c) Both a & b. d) Neither a nor b.
4. How is the weather when they go to school?
 a) Hot. b) Cold. c) Wet. d) Cool.

B

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Jana about her typical day.

٢٠٢٢ القاهرة

Dina : When do you get up?

Jana : (1).....

Dina : (2).....

?

Jana : I have breakfast at six thirty.

Dina : (3).....

?

Jana : I go to school at eight o'clock.

Dina : What time do you come home from school?

Jana : (4).....

Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch?

Jana : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

٢٠٢٢ القاهرة

My name is Mustafa. I'm in preparatory one at Tanta Prep School. When I was at primary school, I walked there every day as it was not far from my house. It took me only 10 minutes to get there. This year, my school is far from my house. I get up early every day and take a bus. The streets are very busy, so it takes me a long time to go and **come back**. My dad is friendly, he bought me a bike. It is wonderful. I sometimes cycle to school. Bikes are a healthy way to travel.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

.....
3. Why do you think Mustafa cycles to school?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa is at Tanta Prep School for year(s).

- a) one b) two c) three d) four

5. The opposite of "**come back**" is

- a) go b) take out c) come to d) get up

6. Mustafa goes to his school by

- a) taxi b) car c) train d) bus

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Girls learn how to cook in the

- a) Arabic b) science
c) maths d) home economics

مدونات

2. My journey to school about 30 minutes.

- a) talks b) wakes c) takes d) makes

3. A: What time is it? B: It's half twelve.

- a) on b) in c) to d) past

المتنوّعة

4. The rings at the beginning and the end of the lessons.

- a) ball b) pin c) bin d) bell

5. I usually eat cheese and eggs breakfast.
a) with b) to c) by d) for

6. Swimming is my hobby. I like it.
a) expensive b) favourite c) bad d) radio

7. I like English and French. I'm good at
a) sports b) languages c) objects d) subjects

8. We go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday.
a) often b) sometimes c) always d) never

9. Sandy is one of friends.
a) Leila's b) Leilas' c) Leilas d) Leila

10. My brother a clever tennis player.
a) always b) is always c) always is d) never

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

١. The mall usually is crowded at the weekend. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

٢. How often are you travel by plane? (.....)

٣. That beautiful blouse is my mothers. (.....)

٤. Nour grows always plants in their garden. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

“School rules”



Monthly Models on Units 1&2

هذه النماذج ستساعدك التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

October Model 1

10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is asking Yehia about his favourite sport.

Samir: Good morning.

Yehia : Good morning. Can I ask you some more questions?

Samir: (1).....

Yehia : Do you have any hobbies?

Samir: (2).....

Yehia : (3).....?

Samir: My favourite sport is football.

Yehia : (4).....?

Samir: I play it on Fridays.

Yehia : (5).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your sister is your parents'

- a) son b) uncle c) aunt d) daughter

2. My uncle travels a lot. He has a lot of

- a) notebooks b) objects c) adventures d) subjects

3. Athletes work hard to their studies, work and their families.

- a) practice b) balance c) arrive d) volunteer

4. We arrived at Luxor Airport at quarter six.

- a) past b) paste c) post d) pasta

5. I can hear the It's time for the English lesson.

- a) bell b) bill c) hall d) ball

- 6.** Children in Uganda cross the lake in a
a) bus **b)** taxi **c)** canoe **d)** snowmobile
- 7.** I usually my homework after school.
a) have **b)** make **c)** take **d)** do
- 8.** What time does school every day?
a) starting **b)** start **c)** starts **d)** started
- 9.** Tell about your family.
a) mine **b)** my **c)** me **d)** I
- 10.** It's pencil case.
a) Ali **b)** Ali's **c)** Alis **d)** Alis'

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1.** I usually plays basketball on Sundays. (.....)
- 2.** She don't like playing tennis. (.....)
- 3.** He helps always his father with his work. (.....)
- 4.** **A:** Who's pencil is yours? **B:** The red one. (.....)
- 5.** **A:** How many do you walk to school? **B:** Always. (.....)

Part 2 **Final Revision**



Check your answers


 قم بمراجعة
 أهم المفردات
 والقواعد اللغوية
 والمهارات وحل
 المزيد من الأسئلة
 الخاصة بالوحدتين
 الأولى والثانية عن
 طريق الذهاب لجزء
 المراجعة الشهرية
 بملحق التقويم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is a game for two people.
 a) Football b) Handball c) Chess d) Volleyball
2. Basmala works hard to her dreams.
 a) sleep b) achieve c) have d) take
3. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an
 a) orphan b) kind c) age d) baby
4. As a gymnast, Ola for 5 or 6 hours daily to be fit.
 a) teaches b) trains c) studies d) swims
5. I learnt how to cook in the lessons.
 a) computer studies b) social studies c) home economics d) maths
6. I always borrow books from the school
 a) lab b) library c) bookshop d) hall
7. People in Egypt are very Many tourists like them.
 a) friendly b) unfriendly c) scary d) boring
8. Girls always to pop music.
 a) listening b) are listening c) listens d) listen
9. Nabil's sister play handball?
 a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Are
10. Fouad is one of friends.
 a) Samy's b) Samys' c) Samys d) Samy

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That pen is me and this is yours. (.....)
2. Where's the teachers room, please? (.....)
3. Who pencil case is this? (.....)
4. That's my father car. (.....)
5. Soliman always walks to school. It's too far. (.....)

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hazem are talking about the school day.

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

Hazem : (1).....

Hatem : (2).....?

Hazem : Mr Samir is our English teacher this year.

Hatem : He's a good teacher. (3).....?

Hazem : We have English today after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

Hazem : (4)..... I like maths.

Hatem : What time is the break?

Hazem : (5).....

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

٢٠٢٣ القاهرية

"Heidi" is the story of an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage mainly about?

.....

2. What do you think of Heidi's life?

.....

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to my uncle. It's him. (.....)
2. We often goes shopping at the weekend. (.....)
3. He always swims. He can't swim. (.....)
4. This is me phone. It's new. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about Eighty (80) words on:

"A day in your school"



Unit 3

Different people

Objectives of the unit

Reading A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

Tapescripts



Writing A blog post about a friend

Listening Descriptions of people

Speaking Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes

Language have / has got; can / can't

Life Skills Respect for diversity; resilience

STUDY



Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 86 & 87

● قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

● قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحلق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| famous (adj) | مشهور | look (ed) like | يشبه |
| footballer (n) | لاعب كرة قدم | moustache (n) | شارب |
| beard (n) | لحية | goal (n) | هدف |
| big smile | ابتسامة كبيرة | runner (n) | عداء/متسلق جري |
| Europe (n) | أوروبا | sports star (n) | نجم رياضي |
| fan (n) | معجب/مشجع | team (n) | فريق |
| Hair types | | | |
| curly hair | شعر مجعد | straight hair | شعر مستقيم |
| dark hair | شعر داكن | blond hair | شعر أشقر |
| short hair | شعر قصير | long hair | شعر طويل |
| Sports | | | |
| basketball (n) | كرة السلة | squash (n) | الإسكواش |
| running (n) | الجري | volleyball (n) | الكرة الطائرة |

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| carry (y/ied) (v) | يحمل | normal (adj) | عادى/طبيعى |
| description (n) | وصف | person (n) | شخص |
| insect (n) | حشرة | present (n) | هدية |
| Italian (n/adj) | اللغة الإيطالية/إيطالي | the Cairo Tower (n) | برج القاهرة |
| glasses (n) | نظارة/نظارات | tortoise (n) | سلحفاة |

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **tiger – tortoise – footballer – like**

- 1 Mohamed Salah is an amazing
- 2 What does your best friend look ?
- 3 The is a very slow animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb

(prep) = preposition
(conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Different people

101

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| jump > high | يقفز عاليًا | score > a goal | يحرز/يسجل هدفًا |
| play > video games | يلعب ألعاب الفيديو | take > a holiday | يأخذ إجازة |
| talk to > fans | يتكلم مع المعجبين | give > money | يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال |

التعابير اللغوية

Prepositions

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| easy for | سهل لـ | play for | يلعب لصالح |
| have time for | لديه وقت لـ | short for a footballer | قصير بالنسبة للاعب كرة القدم |
| go at + السرعة | تسير بسرعة ... | talk to | يتكلم مع/إلى |
| pick (ed) up | يلتقط | travel around | يسافر حول |

حروف الجر

Check Point

Choose and complete: **for – around – score**

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعابير اللغوية
وحروف الجر.

1 Mohamed Salah can a lot of goals.

2 Cristiano Ronaldo plays Al Nasr Football Club in the KSA.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | P.P. | Present | Past simple | P.P. |
|---------|-------------|-------|---------|-------------|-----------|
| build | بني | built | built | give | يعطى |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown | win | يفوز/يكسب |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عکسها |
|--------|--------|--------------------|-------|
| fast | سريع | slow | بطيء |
| poor | فقير | rich | غنى |
| strong | قوى | weak | ضعيف |
| tall | طويل | short | قصير |

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضوع أسللة امتحانية.



1 tall



- My brother is tall.

(طويل) (طول رأسى)

long



- She's got long hair.

(طويل) (طول أفقى)

كيفية وصف شعر شخص ما:

2 How to describe someone's hair:

01 size

02 colour

03 pattern

04 noun

long

dark

curly

short

black

straight

hair

- Mohamed Salah has got long, dark, curly hair.

3

What + do/does + الفاعل + look like?

- What does your father look like?
- He's got short, dark hair.

للسؤال عن الملامح نستخدم

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إيرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



الكلمات ومرادفها

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|--------|--------|-------------------|-------------|
| famous | مشهور | well-known | معروف جيداً |
| strong | قوى | powerful | قوى |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|-------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------------------------|---------|----------------|----------------|
| football (n) كرة قدم | | -er | | تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل | | footballer (n) | لاعب كرة قدم |

Prefix البادئة

| Prefix | البادئة | Function | الوظيفة | Word | الكلمة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|-------------|--------|---------------|----------------|
| un- | | تعطى عكس المعنى | | funny (adj) | مضحك | unfunny (adj) | غير مضحك |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|-------|--------|--------------|-----------------|
| hair | شعر | hear | يسمع |
| fans | معجبون | fins | زعانف السمكة |
| beard | لحية | bread | خبز |

هذا الجزء يوضح لك
الفرق بين الكلمات
المتشابهة في الهجاء
ولكن مختلفة في
المعنى.



B Reading & Listening Skills

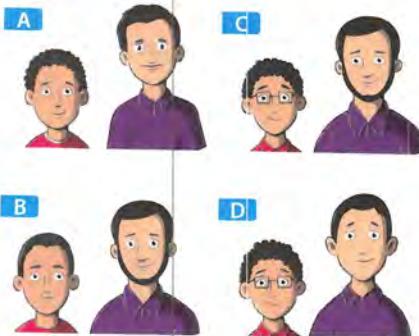
Pre-listening question:

- What does your father look like?

Lesson 1

Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir.

SB page 23



Mazin There's my friend, Samir.

(1) بشبه (2) شعر غامق قصير

Mum I don't know Samir. What does he look like⁽¹⁾?

(3) نظارة (4) لحية

Mazin He's got short, dark hair⁽²⁾.

Mum Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses⁽³⁾?

Mazin No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Mum Has Samir's dad got a beard⁽⁴⁾?

Mazin Yes, he has.

Mum Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

beard /bɪərd/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Mazin's mother has met Samir before? How do you know?



Complete the descriptions with these words:

WB page 86



The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair and a moustache. The second woman has got short blond hair. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?

 Look at the photo. What do you know about this sports star? **SB page 24**

Mohamed Salah is my favourite **sports star⁽¹⁾**.
 He plays football for a very good **team⁽²⁾** in **Europe⁽³⁾**.
 He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast runner⁽⁴⁾**.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a **big smile⁽⁵⁾**.
 He is **quite short⁽⁶⁾** for a **footballer⁽⁷⁾**. He is 1.75 metres **tall⁽⁸⁾**. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a **kind⁽⁹⁾** person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.
 He also gives money to **poor⁽¹⁰⁾** people. He is very **friendly⁽¹¹⁾** and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Europe /'jʊərəp/

score /skɔ:/r/

| | | |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| (1) نجم رياضي | (2) فريق | (3) أوروبا |
| (4) داء سريع | (5) ابتسامة كبيرة | (6) قصير إلى حد ما |
| (7) طول | (8) لاعب كرة قدم | (9) عطوف |
| (10) فقير | (11) ودود | |

Post-reading questions:

- 1** Mohamed Salah is a kind person. Explain.
- 2** Do you think Mohamed Salah is a role model? Why?

Pre-listening question:

- Which sport would you like to practise?

 Listen and circle the correct words. **SB page 25**

My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.



 Complete the sentences with can or can't.

WB page 87



Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.

 **Note:**

England /'ɪŋglənd/ famous /fɜːməs/ Italian /ɪtæliən/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question:

- How many languages can Mohamed Salah speak?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Has your sister got short hair? B: No, she has got hair.
a) long b) slow c) fast d) kind
2. Her hair is It is not straight.
a) blond b) short c) curly d) long
3. I have got short, dark, curly
a) hear b) hair c) ear d) her
4. I can't see well, so I need
a) classes b) glasses c) shoes d) books
5. Mohamed Salah has a big
a) smell b) smile c) mile d) small
6. My sister likes writing stories. She wants to be a famous
a) writer b) gymnast c) nurse d) singer
7. Mohammed Salah is quite short a footballer.
a) on b) to c) at d) for
8. He's Maher's brother. He looks him.
a) like b) by c) with d) near
9. She has got hair. It's very long.
a) street b) straight c) funny d) hard
10. Mohamed Salah is very He always talks to his fans.
a) funny b) rich c) friendly d) poor
11. My cousin lives in Italy, but he can't Italian well.
a) speak b) talk c) tell d) watch
12. I had many on my birthday.
a) presents b) films c) holidays d) features
13. Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian star. He is very famous.
a) sport b) sporty c) sports d) sport's

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah can a lot of goals.
 a) break b) save c) find d) score
2. My grandfather has got a big on his mouth.
 a) hair b) beard c) ear d) moustache
3. My hair is It isn't straight.
 a) blond b) curly c) short d) long
4. Mohammed Salah is friendly and always talks to his
 a) pans b) pins c) vans d) fans
5. A is a group of people who play a sport together.
 a) star b) goal c) footballer d) team
6. One of my hobbies is video games.
 a) playing b) scoring c) giving d) writing
7. Sara always reads stories. They make her laugh.
 a) sad b) unkind c) funny d) bad
8. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports around the world.
 a) moon b) sky c) high d) star
9. Speaking many languages isn't easy most people.
 a) with b) in c) at d) for
10. He was the first. He is really a fast
 a) worker b) teacher c) runner d) writer
11. He has got dark hair and a
 a) beard b) heard c) bird d) tired
12. My grandfather is kind. He helps people.
 a) famous b) strong c) rich d) poor
13. My father doesn't have much time playing a sport.
 a) at b) for c) on d) to

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

1 Have/Has got

يملاك/ لديك/ عندك

I You We They (اسم جمع)

> have(n't) got

- I have got short, curly hair.
- They haven't got curly hair.

Form
التكوين

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> has(n't) got

- Mazin has got a bike.
- My mother hasn't got a car.



يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have/has).

- Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile.

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| Have | I you we they (اسم جمع) | > got ...? |
|------|-------------------------------------|------------|

- A: Have you got curly hair?
B: Yes, I have. / B: No, I haven't.

Question
السؤال

| | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|------------|
| Has | he she it (اسم مفرد) | > got ...? |
|-----|-------------------------------|------------|

- A: Has Mazin got a bike?
B: Yes, he has. / B: No, he hasn't.

Wh-questions

Question word (اداة الاستفهام) + has/have + subj. (الفاعل) + got ...?

A: How many brothers have you got?

B: I have got three brothers.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 She's get blond hair.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود 's و هو اختصار has.

2 A: Have you got glasses? B: No, I have.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود No الدالة على النفي.

تمكّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرّف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Form & Usage:

التكوين والاستخدام:

Subject + can + inf.

يستطيع

We use **can** to say what we are able to do:نستخدم **(can + inf.)** للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء.

- We **can** give money to help poor people.
- I **can** read English books.

Subject + can't + inf.

لا يستطيع

We use **cannot/can't** to say what we are not able to do:نستخدم **(can't + inf.)** للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء.

- I **can't** pick up that box. My arms are weak.
- I **can't** swim well.

Question

Can + subject + inf.?

A: **Can** you play the drums?

B: Yes, I can.

A: **Can** Eman play chess?

B: No, she can't.

لاحظ

Subject + can + inf.

= Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.

• Sara **can** ride a bike.= Sara **is able to** ride a bike.تستخدم **can** للطلب أو الاستئذان:• **Can** I have a cup of coffee, please? Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Omar can't flew a kite.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**fly**) لأن **can't** يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.2 He can drive his father's car?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Can he**) لأنه توجد علامة استفهام فيجب تقديم **Can** على الفاعل **he**.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. My brother has a laptop.
a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
- 2. A: Have you got long hair? B: No, I got short hair.
a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't
- 3. We got a big house. Our house is small.
a) hasn't b) haven't c) aren't d) weren't
- 4. Mohamed Salah has dark, curly hair.
a) gets b) get c) got d) getting
- 5. I got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.
a) have b) hasn't c) haven't d) has
- 6. My father has a smartphone.
a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
- 7. All my brothers and sisters dark, curly hair.
a) has got b) have got c) are got d) is got
- 8. Faten's dad got a red car?
a) Has b) Have c) Do d) Does
- 9. I got brown hair.
a) don't have b) hasn't c) doesn't have d) haven't
- 10. got straight hair?
a) Have you b) You have c) You are d) Are you

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Has you got a mobile phone?
(.....)
- 2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair.
(.....)
- 3. Your father has get a good job.
(.....)
- 4. Have you got a brother? Yes, I haven't.
(.....)
- 5. My best friend have got short, dark hair.
(.....)
- 6. We is got an apple tree in our garden.
(.....)
- 7. I'm busy, I can come with you right now.
(.....)

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What sports you play well?
a) can b) are c) have d) has
2. My dad only speaks English. He speak French.
a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
3. I use your pen, please?
a) Can b) Has c) Have d) Are
4. They live here, the weather is too cold.
a) can't b) aren't c) haven't d) hasn't
5. I'm sorry, I help you today, I'm really busy.
a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't
6. The girls can squash.
a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
7. I can ride a bike, but I drive a car.
a) am not b) am c) can d) can't
8. Look! Ali is there! see him?
a) You have b) Have you c) Can you d) You can
9. I'm sure you do your homework alone. It's very easy!
a) are b) aren't c) can't d) can
10. I speak French, but I know how to write it.
a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Can your sister singing well? (.....)
2. He can't picked up that box. (.....)
3. A: Can she fly a kite? B: Yes, she can't. (.....)
4. He can plays football very well. (.....)
5. I'm a good footballer. I can't play well. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

الشوم

D Skills



Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تهيئين الطالب من كتابة مقررة بشكل جيد.



How to write about your favourite sports star.

كيفية الكتابة عن نجمك الرياضي المفضل.

- I like sports.
 - My favourite sports star is (**الاسم**).
 - He/She plays (**الرياضة**).
 - He/She is (very/quite) (tall/short).
 - He/She is (very/quite) (fast/strong).
 - He/She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curly) hair.
 - He/She is (very/quite) (kind/friendly).
 - He/She always talks to his/her fans.

Writing tips

Note that.

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:

has = 's

is = 's

Example

A sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Mohamed Salah"

I like sports.

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 3**Lessons
(1 & 2)

17

SB

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** Who is Basel?
 a) His brother.
 c) His uncle.
 b) His father.
 d) His friend.
- 2.** What is his favourite subject?
 a) Arabic.
 c) English.
 b) Maths.
 d) Science.
- 3.** What does he like?
 a) Reading.
 c) Writing.
 b) Video games.
 d) Both A and B.
- 4.** What kind of hair has he got?
 a) Curly. b) Straight. c) Blond. d) Dark.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** She has long hair. It's very beautiful.
 a) around b) straight c) funny d) poor
- 2.** My uncle is very funny. He has a big on his face.
 a) smile b) ear c) eye d) insect
- 3.** How is the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres.
 a) tall b) long c) wide d) much
- 4.** Mohamed Salah, Cristiano Ronaldo and Haaland are famous
 a) dentists b) footballers
 c) teachers d) accountants
- 5.** In football matches, there are two
 a) teams b) times
 c) players d) matches
- 6.** Our car can go 150 km/h.
 a) for b) at c) by d) with
- 7.** Adel Emam is a famous film in Egypt.
 a) star b) moon c) land d) runner

WB

8. Eman lots of friends.
a) have got b) haven't c) has got d) hasn't

9. This is too difficult! I do it.
a) can b) can't c) have d) haven't

10. We a lot of homework to do.
a) are b) can c) has got d) have got

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

١. Have you get any brothers? (.....)

٢. What is your sister look like? (.....) ٣٠٣ الفاہرہ

٣. A: Can your uncle speak Chinese? B: Yes, he can't. (.....)

٤. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (.....) ٣٠٤ الدسالیل

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

٢٣-٢٥ العاشرة

"Your favourite sports star"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً في نهاية الكتاب

- 1** Can you give me a of your house?
a) feature b) room c) description d) present

2 Adel to climb that tree.
a) can b) can't c) able d) is able

3 A: Have you got long hair? B: No. I got short hair.
a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't

STUDY

Watch a video

**Lessons 3 & 4**

SB pages 26-28 | WB pages 88 & 89

A Vocabulary**Key Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| adventure (n) | مغامرة | online diary | مفكرة على الانترنت |
| blog post (n) | منشور في مدونة | scary (adj) | مخيف |
| busy (adj) | مشغول | sensible (adj) | عقل/حكيم |
| character (n) | شخصية | strange (adj) | غربي |
| heart (n) | قلب | Wonderland (n) | بلاد العجائب |
| history (n) | التاريخ | website (n) | موقع إنترنت |

المفردات الرئيسية**Additional Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| children's story (n) | قصة أطفال | main (adj) | رئيسي/أساسي |
| clear (adj) | واضح | queen (n) | ملكة |
| information (n) | معلومات | simple (adj) | بسيط |

المفردات الإضافية**Check Point****Choose and complete:****scary – busy – queen – simple**

- 1 A is the wife زوجة of the king.
- 2 I can't play with you. I'm very
- 3 The lion is a animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
المفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions**العبارات اللغوية**

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------|-------------|
| do > art/math | يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات | get > angry | يغضب |
| go > home | يذهب إلى البيت | make > decisions | يتخذ قرارات |

يذهب للسباحة

مرتين في الأسبوع

حروف الجر

Prepositions

| | | | |
|---------------|----------|--------------------|---------------------|
| at the end of | في نهاية | shout at | يصرخ في |
| frightened of | خائف من | write on a website | يكتب في موقع إنترنت |
| learn about | يتعلم عن | play with | يلعب مع / بـ |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

make - of - at - do

- 1 I like drawing. I art after school.
- 2 Children are usually frightened dark places.
- 3 Don't shout your little brother.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعابيرات اللغوية
وحوروف الجر.

Conjugations of irregular verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | P.P. | Present | Past simple | P.P. | |
|---------|-------------|-------|---------|-------------|---------|---------|
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun | يسحب/يعوم | swam | swum |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn | يعتقد | thought | thought |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعدياتها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عديتها |
|-------------|-----------|--------------------|--------|
| angry | غاضب | calm | هدئ |
| brave | شجاع | coward | جبان |
| clever | ماهير/ذكي | stupid | غبي |
| hungry | جوعان | full | ممتلئ |
| interesting | شيق | boring | ممل |
| late | متاخر | early | مبكر |

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 like + (v+ing/n) يحب

- I like swimming.

love (v+ing/n) يحب (بشدة)

- I love learning about the past.

2 Adjectives ending with (ed/ing):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed/ing) تصف الكائن الحي الذي يشعر بهذه الصفة.

- He doesn't know what to do. He is **bored**.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحي أو الشيء الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.

- The film was very **boring**. So, I didn't enjoy it.

3 Study these adjectives:

ادرس هذه الصفات:

- A **clever** person knows a lot.
- A **sensible** person advises people and makes good decisions.
- A **brave** person is happy to do something dangerous.
- Something **scary** makes you feel frightened.
- A **busy** person is always doing something.
- People often feel **angry** when they are unhappy about something.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

blog

مدونة

A website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.

باتظام

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفتها |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| angry | | | | غاضب cross | غاضب |
| clever | | | | ماهر ذكي brilliant | متافق ذكي |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------------|--------|--------|---------|------------------|---------|------------------|----------------|
| frighten (v) | يخيف | -ed | | تحويل الفعل لصفة | | frightened (adj) | خائف |
| sense (n) | حسنة | -ible | | تحويل الاسم لصفة | | sensible (adj) | عقل حكيم |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What would you like to tell us about yourself?

Lesson 3

 Read the **blog post**⁽¹⁾ quickly. What is Yunis's favourite sport? **SB page 26**

All about me



Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark, curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about **the past**⁽²⁾. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at **drawing**⁽³⁾ or **painting**⁽⁴⁾.

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming **twice**⁽⁵⁾ a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is **boring**⁽⁶⁾.

الماضي (2) منشور على مدونة إلكترونية (1)

الرسم (3) التلوين (4)

مرتين (5) معلم (6)



Post-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think of watching TV?
- 2 Why doesn't Yunis like art?

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of sports do you like?

Listen to the game and write the order.

SB page 27

Girl 1 Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 Does she like swimming⁽¹⁾?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Noha.

Girl 1 Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like swimming?

Girl 1 Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

Girl 2 Does she like playing basketball?

Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 It's Dina.

Girl 1 Well done! Three. Who is this?

Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Eman.

Girl 1 No, it isn't.

Girl 2 Does she like basketball?

Girl 1 Yes, she does.

Girl 2 It's Maya.

Girl 1 Yes!

Girl 2 OK, so the last one loves painting⁽²⁾,

she likes watching TV and she doesn't

like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 Yes again!

Dina

swim



paint



play/basketball



Noha

swim



watch/TV



paint



Eman

watch/TV



paint



play/basketball



Maya

watch/TV



paint



play/basketball



السباحة (1)

اللّوّين/ الرسم (2)

Post-listening question:

- Did you like the game? Why/ Why not?

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite subject?

 **Read the blogs and write the questions a–c in the correct place.**

WB page 88

- a. Which sport do you like?
- b. What do you do in the evening?
- c. What is your favourite subject?

c. What is your favourite subject?

- 1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



a. Which sport do you like?

- 2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

b. What do you do in the evening?

- 3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Riham isn't good at tennis?
- 2 What subjects is Riham good at?

- Who is your favourite writer?

 Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? Is it a true story?

SB page 28

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland⁽¹⁾ is a famous children's story. Alice's *adventure*⁽²⁾ begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a *strange*⁽³⁾ place. She is a *sensible*⁽⁴⁾ girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also *brave*⁽⁵⁾ and *clever*⁽⁶⁾. She meets a lot of interesting *characters*⁽⁷⁾.

Alice often sees the **White Rabbit**. The White Rabbit is very *busy*⁽⁸⁾ – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The **Cheshire Cat** is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

The **Queen of Hearts** is not very nice. She is a *scary*⁽⁹⁾ person. She is always *angry*⁽¹⁰⁾ and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not *frightened*⁽¹¹⁾ of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

Post-reading questions:

1 Alice is a brave girl. Explain.

2 What have you learnt from the story?



بلاد العجائب (1)

عمر (4)

شخصيات (7)

غاضب (10)

خائف (11)

مغامرة (2)

شجاع (5)

مشغول (8)

غريب (3)

صادر (6)

مخيف (9)

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like because I am very good at drawing.
a) art b) history c) science d) maths
2. I often swimming on Fridays.
a) make b) catch c) go d) do
3. I do not like this programme. I think it is
a) boring b) cool c) interesting d) good
4. A busy person is always
a) talking b) walking
c) laughing d) doing something
5. Something scary makes you feel
a) frightened b) happy c) funny d) free
6. Tamer is writing about his weekend in his online
a) printer b) diary c) mouse d) laptop
7. A person knows a lot.
a) brave b) busy c) clever d) sad
8. A blog is a/an on which someone writes regularly.
a) website b) playground c) office d) library
9. People often feel when they are unhappy about something.
a) weak b) strong c) hungry d) angry
10. A sensible person good decisions.
a) goes b) watches c) makes d) does
11. I like history, so I love learning about the
a) present b) past c) now d) tomorrow
12. Alice is the main in the story I read.
a) diary b) blog c) post d) character
13. She is a wise girl. This means she is
a) naughty b) sensible c) bad d) lazy

٢٠٢٣ الجبر WB

٢٠٢٣ الاسكندرية WB

٢٠٢٤ الشرق WB

٢٠٢٤ المدن WB

٢٠٢٥ المدن WB

٢٠٢٦ المدن WB

٢٠٢٧ القاهرة WB

٢٠٢٨ القاهرة WB

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A brave person is happy to do something
a) fun b) strange c) bad d) dangerous
2. My father is He thinks well.
a) sensible b) nervous c) bored d) strange
3. She is a person, she shouts at people.
a) friendly b) sensible c) brave d) scary
4. A blog is a/an diary.
a) online b) offline c) inline d) line
5. Ahmed likes because he loves learning about the past.
a) painting b) post c) post d) history
6. He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very
a) happy b) angry c) brave d) scared
7. I always sport on holidays. My favourite sport is football.
a) play b) make c) go d) take
8. She is good at art. She loves
a) playing b) swimming c) painting d) printing
9. I like maths. I am quite good at maths.
a) giving b) making c) playing d) doing
10. I like reading books and stories.
a) giving b) writing c) helping d) doing
11. We can't live without a
a) heart b) beard c) moustache d) leg
12. Who is the main of the story?
a) character b) website c) adventure d) heart
13. I usually go swimming on Fridays. I do it
a) kindly b) clearly c) nicely d) regularly

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



1. Speaking

Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.

هي شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هي تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

She's Alice.

إنها «أليس».



He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متاخر ويجري بسرعة دائمة.

He's the White Rabbit.

إنه «وايت رابيت».



He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.

He's the Cheshire Cat.

إنه «شيشاير كات».



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► Noha is asking Sara about reading.

الصفحة ٣٣٣

Noha : Hi, Sara. How are you?

Sara : (1).....

Noha : Do you like reading?

Sara : (2)..... I like reading books very much.

Noha : (3)..... ?

Sara : I read books at the library.

Noha : (4)..... ?

Sara : My favourite book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

Noha : Is it interesting?

Sara : (5).....



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكن الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write about your favourite book.

كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل.

- I like reading.
- I like reading books by (اسم الكاتب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الفقرة هي مجموعة من الجمل التي تقدم موضوعاً او فكرة واحدة.

Example

The book I like

I like reading because reading is my favourite hobby. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite storybook is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's about a girl called Alice. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She meets the White Rabbit which is always late. She also meets the Cheshire Cat which has a big smile, at last she meets the Queen of Hearts. She is always angry and shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

2. How to write about your best friend.

كيف تكتب عن صديقك المفضل.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (صفة) hair.
- He/She likes (هواياته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

Example

My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.



1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

5-550910

I like reading short stories so much. One of my favourite stories is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland". It is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was a strange, but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person but Alice was not frightened of her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?
.....
 2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?
.....
 3. What do you think of Alice?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is very He has a big smile.
a) busy b) brave c) angry d) funny

2. Alice had a lot of in Wonderland.
a) adventures b) places c) devices d) water

3. Sally is always angry and she shouts people.
a) on b) at c) in d) about

4. He's very , so he is not frightened of anything.
a) brave b) busy c) angry d) uncle

5. My grandfather is He gives us good advice.
a) bad b) sensible c) scary d) worried

6. She is the of this country. She is the most important person there.
a) story b) character c) queen d) worker

7. I usually visit my grandmother a week.

- a) double b) second c) two d) twice

8. Nahla go out tonight. She has an exam tomorrow.

- a) can't b) haven't c) will d) can

9. My little sister has a doll.

- a) get b) got c) gets d) getting

10. What Sara got?

- a) have b) has c) having d) to have

٢٠٢٣ المنشورة

٢٠٢٣ الشرقية

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have Samir got a beard?

(.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

2. How many lessons do you got today?

(.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

3. I can't open the door. I have got a key.

(.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4. You can giving money to the poor.

(.....) السُّرْقَةَ ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite story"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 I like meeting people. They are very nice.

- a) bored b) boring
c) interesting d) interested

2 Clever, brave and sensible are

- a) nouns b) verbs
c) adjectives d) adverbs

3 Children often to get what they want.

- a) shout b) go
c) write d) make

STUDY**Lessons 5 & 6**

SB pages 29 - 31 | WB pages 90 - 92

A Vocabulary**Key Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|------------|
| exciting (adj) | مثير | secret (n/adj) | سر/سرى |
| garden (n) | حديقة (منزل) | storm (n) | عاصفة |
| island (n) | جزيرة | treasure (n) | كنز |
| review (n) | نقد | wheelchair (n) | كرسي متحرك |

المفردات الرئيسية**Additional Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| appearance (n) | مظهر | personality (n) | شخصية |
| (be) called (v) | يسمى/يدعى | pool (n) | حوض السباحة |
| cool (adj) | رائع | the country (n) | الريف |

المفردات الإضافية**Language Expressions**

| | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|--------|----------|----------------------|
| have > lunch | يتناول الطعام | make > | a poster | يعمل ملصقاً إعلانياً |
| He is a lot of fun. | إنه ممتع للغاية. | | notes | يدوّن ملاحظات |

العبارات اللغوية**Prepositions**

| | | | |
|----------------|----------|----------------|---------------|
| different from | مختلف عن | think of | يعتقد في |
| difficult for | صعب لـ | travel around | يتنقل حول |
| far from | بعيد عن | work on a boat | يعمل على قارب |

حروف الجر**Check Point****Choose and complete:** island – the country – from – cool – garden

- 1 The weather is very in spring.
- 2 My grandfather has a farm in
- 3 Elephantine is in Aswan.
- 4 My school is far my house.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 Asking about someone's personality:

السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما:
What + is/are + (الفاعل) + like? ما صفاتـه؟

- A: What is your teacher like?
- B: He's kind and friendly.

2 Asking about someone's hobbies:

السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما:
What + do/does + (الفاعل) + like doing? مـا يـحب أن يـفعل؟

- A: What do you like doing?
- B: I like playing football.

3 Joining words:

روابط (الإضافة / التناقض / السبب / النتيجة):
and و (العنف والإضافة)

but ولكن (التناقض)
He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.

because لأن (السبب)
Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

so لذلك (النتيجة)
I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

so لذلك (النتيجة)
Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس لحفظ.



Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفـها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفـها |
|----------|--------|-------------------|----------|
| exciting | مثير | interesting | شيق |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix اللاحقة | Function الوظيفة | The new word الكلمة الجديدة |
|------------|--------|----------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| appear (v) | يظهر | -ance | تحويل الفعل لاسم | appearance (n) مظاهر |
| excite (v) | يشـر | -ing | تحويل الفعل لصفة | exciting (adj) مثير |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite book?

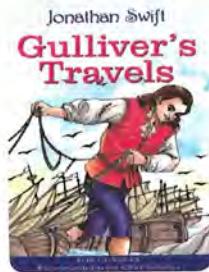
Lesson 5

 Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them.

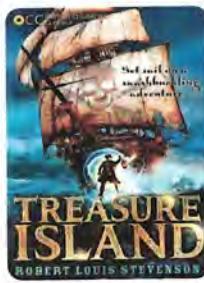
WB page 90



آن من المرتفعات الخضراء



رحلات غوليفر



جزيرة الكنـز

My favourite book is *Anne of Green Gables* by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.

My favourite book is called *Gulliver's Travels*, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.

My favourite book is *Treasure Island*. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



Note:

orphan /'ɔ:fən/ treasure /treʒər/ island /aɪlənd/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most? Why?

Listen and complete the sentences.

WB page 90

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things?

Lesson 6

SB page 30

Who's your best friend?

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a **wheelchair⁽¹⁾** because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things **together⁽²⁾**. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12



(1) كرسي متحرك (2) معاً/سوياً

Life Skills

1. How are people in your life different from you?
2. Are differences important? Why/ Why not?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yunis likes watching TV because he thinks it's الفرند
a) bad b) exciting c) ugly d) boring
2. You should never tell your to other people. الأخلاص
a) secret b) post c) poster d) note
3. Hany has got a because he can't walk. المتحف
a) table b) ladder c) pool d) wheelchair
4. Nasser is not very good at maths, he is very good at English. الكلمات
a) so b) because c) and d) but
5. I like Ahmed because he is a lot of الكلمات
a) fins b) fans c) fun d) falls
6. This is not my book: it's different mine. الأشياء
a) from b) at c) on d) about
7. She went to live with her grandparents in the It's quiet there. البلد
a) capital b) boat c) country d) city
8. He likes the sea. He wants to work a boat. الكلمات
a) out b) to c) on d) of
9. We usually lunch at four o'clock. الكلمات
a) do b) have c) go d) write
10. We have a house with a big We plant some trees there. الكلمات
a) garden b) pool c) island d) secret
11. Life is not easy poor people. الكلمات
a) for b) at c) on d) in
12. This is a good book. I read a good about it. الكلمات
a) treasure b) country c) review d) poster
13. We went on a school trip. It was I enjoyed so much. الكلمات
a) cool b) boring c) strange d) bad

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 3

Lessons
(5 & 6)

15.5

الكلمات الجديدة

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed asks Hossam about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport, Hossam?

Hossam : (1)

Ahmed : Why are you good at it?

Hossam : (2)

Ahmed : (3)

Hossam : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4)

Hossam : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you?

Hossam : (5)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is something you don't want people to know about.

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| a) secretary | b) truth |
| c) secret | d) lie |

2. He can't walk, he needs a

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| a) chain | b) swing |
| c) wing | d) wheelchair |

3. The first day at school was I liked it so much.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) exciting | b) boring |
| c) ugly | d) bad |

4. He likes reading and video games.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| a) writing | b) playing |
| c) making | d) doing |

5. An email is a simple sent through the internet.

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| a) gift | b) passage |
| c) message | d) notebook |

6. He has a kind, friendly We all like him.

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| a) storm | b) review |
| c) problem | d) personality |

7. Students should notes of what their teachers say.
a) make b) do c) play d) catch

8. I love swimming, I don't like swimming in the sea.
a) so b) but c) because d) and

9. He is kind he is very funny.
a) and b) so c) but d) because

10. Mayar loves on Fridays.
a) cook b) cooked c) cooking d) to cooking

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Basmala gets up late on Friday so it's a holiday. (.....)
 2. I like football because I don't like watching matches on TV. (.....)
 3. I wasn't hungry, but I didn't eat. (.....)
 4. I love English, Arabic so Italian. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً في نهاية الكتاب

Review

on Unit



Vocabulary

| | |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| adventure | أَدْبُرْيَا |
| island | جِزِيرَةٌ |
| angry | غَاضِبٌ |
| appearance | صَفْحَةٌ |
| moustache | مَثْنَرٌ |
| beard | لِحَىٰ |
| personality | شَخْصِيَّةٌ |
| runner | عَدْوٌ/مَسْبِقَةٌ جَرِيدٌ |
| character | شَخْصِيَّةٌ |
| children's story | قصَصُ الْأَطْفَالِ |
| sensible | عَاقِلٌ/جَيِّدٌ |
| curly | مَبْعُدٌ |
| sports star | نَجْمٌ رِياضِيٌّ |
| storm | عَاصِمَةٌ |
| exciting | مُثْرِيٌّ |
| strange | غَرِيبٌ |
| famous | مشْهُورٌ |
| team | فُرْيقَةٌ |
| the country | الْأَرِيشَةٌ |
| wonderland | بَلَادُ الْعَجَابِ |
| friendly | وَدِيدٌ |
| treasure | كَنزٌ |
| wheelchair | كرْسِيسٌ مُحَرِّكٌ |
| fan | مَكْبُوبٌ/شَحْجَنٌ |

Language

1. Have / Has got

Affirmative

- I **have got** short, curly hair.
- Mazin **has got** a bike.

Negative

- They **haven't got** curly hair.
- My dad **hasn't got** a beard.

Question

- **Have you got** glasses?
- **Has your father got** a beard?

2. Can / Can't

Affirmative

- We **can give** money to help poor people.
- I **can read** English books.

Negative

- I **can't pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I **can't swim** well.

and he is very friendly.

- He's the White Rabbit.

- إنه "الوايت رابت".
- هو مُهَاجِرٌ. إنه أَنْسَاطَةٌ كِبِيرَةٌ مُوَجِّهٌ بِهِ.

- He's the Cheshire Cat.

- إنه "شِيشِيرٌ كَاتِنٌ".
- A: **Can** you **play** the drums?
B: Yes, I can.
- A: **Can** Eman **play** chess?
B: No, she can't.

Skills

Describing a character from a story

- She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.
- هُنْ شَخْصَيْةٌ مَاهِرَةٌ وَشَجَاعَةٌ وَعَافِفَةٌ. هُنْ تَهْبَطُ إِلَيْهِ الْعَجَابَاتِ.

- [إِنَّهَا "أَلِيسٌ".]

- He is very busy – and he is usually very late.
He always runs fast.

- هُوَ مُشْتَهَىٰ بَعْدَ أَنْ يَجِدْ بَسْرَعَةٍ.
- بِالْأَنْتَ.

- He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile.

- إنه "الوايت رابت".

- إنه "شِيشِيرٌ كَاتِنٌ".

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1.** What is your favourite book?

 - a) Alice.
 - c) Gulliver's Travels.
 - b) Treasure Island.
 - d) Anne of Green Gables.

2. Who wrote it?

 - a) Jonathan Swift.
 - c) Robert Louis.
 - b) Lucy Maud.
 - d) Shakespeare.

3. What is it about?

 - a) A sailor.
 - c) An orphan.
 - b) A brave boy.
 - d) A doctor.

4. Where does he/she work?

 - a) In a garden.
 - c) At a hospital.
 - b) On a boat.
 - d) At a school.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

$\tilde{C} = \tilde{C}' \mu^2$

Asmaa and Sara are talking about sport.

Sara : Hi, Asmaa. How are you?

Asmaa : (1).....

Sara : (2)

Asmaa : My favourite sport is football.

Sara : (3)

Asmaa : I play it at the club.

Sara : Who is your favourite player?

Asmaa : (4)

Sara : Does he score a lot of goals?

Asmaa : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark, straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia governorate with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He likes it greatly. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. I like him because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

2. What do you think of Akram?

3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Akram has got , straight hair.

a) dark

b) light

c) red

d) brown

5. Akram lives in governorate.

a) Qena

b) Qalyoubia

c) Gharbia

d) Cairo

6. Akram doesn't like art because he is at art.

a) good

b) brilliant

c) clever

d) bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haaland many goals every year.

a) plays

b) helps

c) takes

d) scores

2. I am a of Mohammad Salah.

a) fin

b) fan

c) fun

d) customer

3. He has three cars and three houses. He is very

a) rich

b) poor

c) weak

d) fast

4. There are many interesting in this story.

- a) devices b) characters c) players d) actors

5. A person is the person who always thinks carefully.

- a) fat b) strong c) sensible d) lazy

6. Hani uses a to go to school because he can't walk.

- a) pencil case b) wheelchair c) sharpener d) pencil

7. My teacher asked me to a poster about a famous person.

- a) make b) do c) stay d) save

8. got any questions to ask?

- a) You have b) Have you c) Do you d) You do

9. My son got blue eyes.

- a) does b) is c) have d) has

10. I can't my coffee. It's too hot.

- a) to drink b) drinks c) drink d) drinking

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm tired, so I went to bed very late. (.....)

2. We can't go now. I am ready. (.....)

3. The music is so loud. I can't hearing you. (.....)

4. She can jumps very high. (.....) القاهرة



Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A famous sports star"



Assess your
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

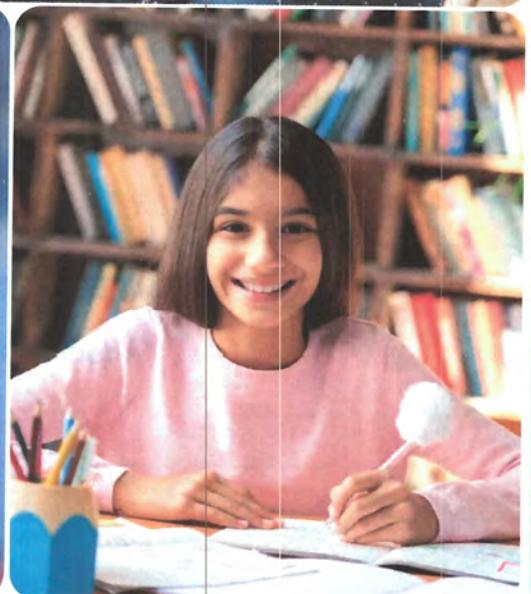
65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!

Review A



Units 1, 2 & 3

Review A

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What is your father's job?

 **Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words.**

SB page 32

1.

This is my aunt. **Her** name's Amal. She's **my** mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



2.

This is my uncle. **His** name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.



3.

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children – a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. **Their** names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



4.

Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with **her** toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.



Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Malak is funny?

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think that children like their schools? Why?

Headphones Listen and circle the correct words.

WB page 93

Aya Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I have got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.



Lesson 2

Headphones Listen to Shady talking about his day. Circle the correct words. SB page 33

Woman What time do you get up, Shady?

Shady I usually get up at a quarter to seven on a school day.



Woman How do you travel to school?

Shady I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman Do you like school?

Shady Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman And what do you do after school?

Shady I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

Shady No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.

Post-listening question: - What do you usually do in your free time?



Unit 4

We're using technology!

Objectives of the unit

Reading A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

Tapescripts



Writing A paragraph and a poster about online safety

Listening A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

Speaking Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

Language There is / there are; the present continuous

Life Skills Problem solving; resilience

STUDY



Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 95 & 96



قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضوع أسئلة امتحانية.

قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لصفحة التقويم وتنسيق الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 3D printer (n) | طابعة ثلاثة الأبعاد | printer (n) | الطابعة |
| click on the icon | ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر) | send a photo | يرسل صورة |
| guess (ed) (v) | يُخمن | send a text message | يرسل رسالة نصية |
| look at a website | يلقي نظرة على موقع إلكتروني | tablet (n) | الجهاز اللوحي (تابلت) |
| mouse (n) | فأرة الكمبيوتر | take a selfie | يلتقط صورة شخصية |
| MP3 player (n) | مشغل أم بي ثري | tap on the icon | يضغط على أيقونة (بالهاتف) |
| phone charger (n) | شاحن الهاتف | use technology | يستخدم التكنولوجيا |
| print (ed) (v) | يطبع | write an email | يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني |

Language Expressions

العبارات اللغوية

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| design > an icon | يصمم أيقونة | make > a model | يصنع نموذجاً |
| do > computer studies | يدرس الكمبيوتر | chess pieces | يرتب قطع الشطرنج |
| do > homework | يقوم بعمل الواجب | sleep > in a chair | ينام على كرسي |

Prepositions

حروف الجر

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---|--|
| at the moment | في هذه اللحظة | look for | يبحث عن |
| charge ... with | يشحن ... بـ | on a laptop/ a computer/ a mobile phone | على اللاب توب/ الكمبيوتر/ الهاتف المحمول |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

MP3 player – for – tap – use

- 1 I can't find my pen. Will you help me look it?
- 2 Most people technology nowadays.
- 3 I listen to music on my

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
المفردات الرئيسية
والعبارات اللغوية
و حروف الجر .

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| mean | يعني/يقصد | meant |
| send | يرسل | sent |

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|--------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| new | جديد | old | قديم |
| online | عبر الانترنت | offline | غير متصل بالإنترنت |
| sleep | ينام | wake up | يسنّم |

Language Notes

- 1** Would you like to + inf.?
هل تود أن/هل تزيد أن ...؟
I'd (would) like to + inf.
أنا أود أن ...
• Would you like to use a 3D printer?
• I'd like to take a selfie.

- 2** الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجمع الكلمة الثانية فقط.
• laptop computers / mobile phones.

- 3** Prepositions of place:
حرروف جر المكان:





next to بجانب/بجوار behind خلف in front of أمام under تحت near بالقرب من

- 4** An MP3 player
لاحظ استخدام **an** مع كلمة **MP3 player** لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك حيث إن حرف (M) ينطق (em).
• There's an MP3 player on the desk.

- 5** one of + (اسم جمع)
فعل مفرد + (اسم جمع)
• One of my friends likes computer studies.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

| | | |
|---------------|----------------|---|
| A printer | الطباعة | a machine ⁽¹⁾ which is connected to ⁽²⁾ a computer and can make copies ⁽³⁾ of information |
| An MP3 player | مشغل إم بي ثري | a machine or a computer program ⁽⁴⁾ that plays music |
| A blog | مدونة | is an online ⁽⁵⁾ diary. |

التعريفات

- (1) الما
- (2) متعلقة بـ
- (3) تنس
- (4) برنامج
- (5) عبر الانترنت

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|-------|--------|-------------------|-------------------|
| send | يرسل | post | يرسل بالبريد/ينشر |
| small | صغير | tiny | صغير جداً |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|--------------|----------------|
| charge (v) | يشحن | | -er | تحول الفعل لاسم | | charger (n) | شاحن |
| print (v) | يطبع | | | | | printer (n) | الطباعة |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|-------|--------|--------------|-----------------|
| tap | يضغط | tape | شريط |
| click | ينقر | clock | ساعة حائط |
| mouse | فأرة | mouth | فم |

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 One of my sisters in primary school.
 a) are b) is c) has d) have
- 2 To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix "".
 a) -er b) -or c) -ment d) -ness

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What forms of technology do you use at school?

 **Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

SB pages 34 & 35



(1) الأجهزة اللوحية

(2) أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمول

(3) فارة

(4) طابعة

(5) بطبيع

(6) هاتف محمول

(7) يشحذ

(8) شاحن الهاتف

(9) مشغل أغانٍ

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets ⁽¹⁾ in school. There are two laptop computers ⁽²⁾ in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse ⁽³⁾. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer ⁽⁴⁾, too. My friend, Omar, is printing ⁽⁵⁾ his homework.

I have got a mobile phone ⁽⁶⁾ but it's in my bag – we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging ⁽⁷⁾ his phone with a phone charger ⁽⁸⁾. And he's got a new MP3 player ⁽⁹⁾, it's small and blue. Can you see it?

Post-reading question: Choose:

- The text is about using in the classroom.

a) mobile phones

b) technology

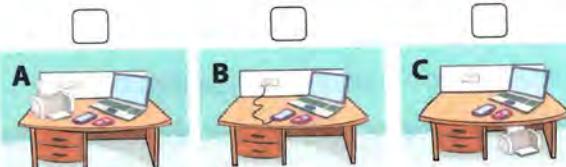
c) nature

d) sports

 Listen to the description of the classroom. Tick (✓) the correct picture.

SB page 35

There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



Pre-reading question:

- What is your father doing now?

Lesson 2

 Read the text message conversation. What is in this photo? **SB page 36**

 online



- Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

* I'm playing chess **online**⁽¹⁾. I'm winning at the moment! 



- Are you using your new laptop?

* Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing? 



- I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about **3D printers**⁽²⁾.

* What are your mum and Alia doing? 



- They're **taking selfies**⁽³⁾. I'm sending you one of their photos now.



- (1) عبر الانترنت
(2) الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
(3) يلتقط صوراً شخصية

* Oh yes! That's a great photo. 

Type a message 

Note:

website /'websaɪt/
information /ɪnfər'meɪʃn/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What game is granddad playing online?
- 2 Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought a new MP3 to play music.
القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) computer b) player c) speaker d) printer
2. I use the to recharge my mobile phone.
المغرب ٢٠٢٣
a) earphone b) tablet c) charger d) mouse
3. You can use the to click on different icons on the computer.
القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) mouse b) printer c) charger d) mouth
4. I on the icon many times, but the mobile didn't work.
الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
a) clicked b) tapped c) rung d) knocked
5. I'd like to a selfie in front of the river.
البلد ٢٠٢٣
a) make b) take c) tap d) click
6. We use our in the classroom to learn.
a) chargers b) tablets c) players d) phones
7. A/An is a kind of computer.
القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) white board b) charger c) MP3 player d) laptop
8. I like models. This is a model plane.
a) sending b) writing c) making d) doing
9. The whiteboard is the teacher.
a) between b) next c) behind d) in front
10. I like to play games my mobile phone.
a) in b) on c) at d) for
11. The book is full of useful
a) design b) white board c) information d) printer
12. To know some information about animals, at this website.
a) look b) click c) tap d) write
WB
13. A blog is a/an online
a) diary b) dairy c) day d) date

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you me a text message when you arrive?
a) take b) send c) play d) do
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
2. There is a keyboard to the laptop.
a) far b) in front c) next d) under
٢٠٢٣ المنوفية
3. My brother likes to computer studies.
a) make b) use c) send d) do
٢٠٢٣ الشروق
4. He his mobile to talk to his friends.
a) makes b) smiles c) uses d) sends
٢٠٢٣ الشروق
5. Computers and mobiles are examples of
a) food b) technology c) subjects d) hobbies
٢٠٢٣ الشروق
6. He's charging his phone a phone charger.
a) in b) on c) with d) by
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
7. We can a video call with our cousins in England.
a) make b) take c) see d) send
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
8. Don't photos to people you don't know.
a) receive b) make c) send d) play
WB
9. the icon on your computer.
a) Give b) Fill c) Click d) Play
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
10. I looked my watch everywhere, but I didn't find it.
a) after b) at c) for d) up
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
11. Marwan likes playing games He is on the internet every day.
a) online b) offline c) line d) outline
٢٠٢٣ الجريدة
12. There is a mouse the laptop on the teacher's desk.
a) far b) in front c) next d) near
WB

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 There is: يوجد للمفرد

There are: يوجد للجمع

There is + ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد .

- There is a printer.
- There is some water.

Affirmative

There isn't + ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد .

- There isn't a printer.
- There isn't any water.

Negative

There are + ... اسم جمع .

- There are two laptops.
- There are some boys here.

Is there + ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ?

- Is there a printer?
 - Is there any water?
- Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

**Yes/No
questions**

There aren't + ... اسم جمع .

- There aren't any laptops.
- There aren't any boys here.

Are there + ... اسم جمع ...?

- Are there any laptops?
 - Are there any boys here?
- Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.



Remember

some & any

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (في الجملة المثبتة). ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are **some apples** in this dish.

- There is **some rice** in this dish.

- يمكن استخدامها أيضاً في العرض والطلب:

- Would you like **some tea**?

(عرض)

- Can I have **some books**?

(طلب)

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أي (في الجملة المنافية والسؤال بمعنى هل). ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There **aren't any tablets** in my classroom. - Is there **any juice** in the bottle?



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 There are any notebooks in your bag?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are there) لوجود علامة استفهام (صيغة سؤال).

2 There are any oranges on the tree.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (some) لأن الجملة مثبتة.

2 The present continuous tense:

زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are **happening now**.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

She is writing a letter at the moment.

I am reading a story now.

Form

التكوين

| | | | | | |
|------|-----|--|-----------|--|------------------------|
| I | am | | | | I am playing football. |
| He | | | | | |
| She | is | | | | |
| It | | | | | |
| You | | | inf + ing | | |
| We | | | | | |
| They | are | | | | |

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

ما زال still - احترس! Watch out! - انظر Look! - escucha!

(now) - الان at the moment - في هذه اللحظة at present - في الوقت الحاضر

- My grandfather is using his laptop now.

- My uncle is watching TV at the moment.

◀ عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

لاحظ

(take - taking) - (come - coming) (ing) (e) (take - takes) - (come - comes)

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing)

بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقها حرف متحرك، غالباً ما ننفع الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing)

(put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)

(die - dying) - (lie - lying) .(ying) (ie) ثم نضع (ie) نحذف الـ (ie)



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 Ramy study English at the moment. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (at the moment) (is studying) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.
- 2 Watch out! A car comes. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Watch out!) (is coming) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.
- 3 I can't go out. I do my homework. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أي زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. There's cheese in the fridge.
a) any b) some c) a lot d) many
2. I'm very thirsty. Can I have cold water, please?
a) many b) a lot c) some d) any
3. There a printer above the table.
a) is b) are c) has d) have
4. Are there tablets?
a) some b) a c) any d) a lot
5. There isn't an MP3 player, but there two mobile phones.
a) are b) aren't c) is d) isn't
6. any juice in the bottle?
a) Is there b) Are there c) There is d) There are
7. There any notebooks in my bag.
a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
8. There aren't boys in the class.
a) some b) any c) no d) much
9. There isn't meat on the table.
a) a b) a lot c) some d) any
10. any girls in your class?
a) There is b) Is there c) There are d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. There aren't some eggs in the fridge. (.....)
2. A: Is there any milk in the bottle? B: No, there is. (.....)
3. Is there any figs in the fridge? (.....)
4. We don't have some books on the shelves. (.....)
5. There aren't any rice in the dish. (.....)
6. Can I have any juice, please? (.....)

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. They at websites for information now.
 a) are looking b) looking c) looked d) look
- 2. Look! Adel in the garden.
 a) works b) are working
 c) is working d) work
- 3. My sisters are the dishes at the moment.
 a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
- 4. The boys in the playground now.
 a) play b) played c) are playing d) playing
- 5. My friend his homework now.
 a) printed b) is printing
 c) printing d) prints
- 6. Mum and my sister a cake at the moment.
 a) is baking b) are baking c) bakes d) baked
- 7. Basmala sleeping now.
 a) can b) does c) is d) has
- 8. Some kids noise inside the class.
 a) is making b) makes c) making d) are making
- 9. is cleaning the house at the moment.
 a) Mayada b) Mayada and her mum
 c) We d) I

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. She is watches a nice programme now. (.....)
- 2. Ahmed is played chess online. (.....)
- 3. I drink tea at the moment. (.....)
- 4. Ali and Kamal is riding their bikes. (.....)
- 5. Listen! She sings beautifully. (.....)
- 6. My little sister aren't doing her homework at the moment. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills



Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطلاب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a description of your classroom.

كيفية كتابة وصف عن حجرتك الدراسية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- We often use (اسم الجهاز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجهاز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people
what your paragraph is about.

- استخدم عنواناً لتخبر الناس عن موضوع
مقرتك.

Example

Classroom objects

My name's Samy. Our life is going fast now because of technology. Technology helps us get information easily. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. We use them to look for information on the internet. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. There is a board. The teacher always explains the lessons on it. I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your classroom"

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ٣٠٢٢ الفرنسية

1. A is a photo you take for yourself.
a) door b) printer c) selfie d) castle

2. My computer makes a loud click.
a) mouse b) printer c) charger d) tablet

3. Young people use the to listen to music.
a) charger b) MP3 player c) printer d) mouse

4. You can on the icon and find information.
a) tap b) tape c) try d) look

5. Mr. Osama is his phone with a phone charger.
a) wearing b) killing c) breaking d) charging

6. We usually use mobile phones to send messages.
a) test b) taste c) text d) taxi

7. There is a phone charger of the printer.
a) next b) behind c) in front d) under

8. My sister me with my homework at the moment.
a) helps b) helping c) helped d) is helping

9. a lot of supermarkets in your city?
a) Is there b) There is c) There are d) Are there
10. There aren't trees in front of my house.
a) any b) some c) a d) a lot

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Manal having lunch with her family now. (.....)
2. There isn't some sugar in my tea. (.....)
3. I'm play chess online now. (.....) التناهرة
4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (.....) القافحة

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Technology you use in the classroom"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 If you an icon for "take a selfie", what will it look like?

- a) design b) tap
c) click d) do

2 There are two in the classroom.

- a) laptop computer b) laptops computers
c) laptops computer d) laptop computers

3 My brother studies at university in the USA.

- a) an b) some
c) a d) much

STUDY

Watch a video



Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

dancer (n)

راقصة

dictionary (n)

قاموس

nature (n)

الطبيعة

programme (n)

school uniform (n)

wave (d) (v)

برنام

زي مدرسي

يلوح بيده

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

break time (n)

وقت الفسحة

puzzle (n)

لغز

drop (ped) (v)

يسقط

stay (ed) (v)

يقيم/يظل

المفردات الإضافية

Language Expressions

bring > a drink

يحضر مشروباً

go > outside

يذهب للخارج

do > a hobby

يؤدي هواية

have > a hobby

لديه هواية

talk to > a friend

يتحدث مع صديق

mime > an action

يمثل حدثاً

give > advice

يعطى نصيحة

take > notes

يسجل ملاحظات

العبارات اللغوية

Prepositions

at break/lunchtime

في الفسحة/وقت الغداء

put my hand up

أرفع يدي لأعلى

on an MP3 player

على مشغل الموسيقى

smile at

يتسم لـ

programme on

البرنامج يعرض

write with

يكتب باستخدام

حروف الجر

Check Point

Choose and complete:**programme - at - stay - wave**

1 A: What's your favourite TV? B: Wicked Tuna.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والعبارات اللغوية
وحوروف الجر.

2 Smile the camera to get a good photo.

3 We don't in class during the break.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

bring

يحضر

Past simple

brought

wear

يرتدى

wore

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Past participle

brought

worn

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|-----------|---------------|--------------------|-------|
| different | مختلف | similar/same | مشابه |
| stay | يبقى/يقيم/يظل | leave | يغادر |
| hot | حار | cold | بارد |

Language Notes

درس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضوع أسلحة امتحانية.



1 like/don't like + being

يحب/يحب إلا يكون

- I like being in the garden.
- I don't like being in the house.

2 use + to + inf. / for + v + ing

يستخدم لـ

- Hala is using her mobile phone to make/ for making a video call.

3 need + (n) يحتاج / need to + (inf.) يحتاج إلى أن

- I need some water, please.
- I need to drink some water, please.



جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفتها |
|------|---------------|-------------------|----------|
| hot | حار | warm | دافئ |
| stay | يبقى/يقيم/يظل | remain | يبقى/يظل |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------------|---------|--------------|----------------|
| act (v) | يتصرف | -ion | | تحويل الفعل لاسم | | action (n) | عمل/تصرف |
| dance (v) | يرقص | -er | | تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل | | dancer (n) | راقصة |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What are your brothers/sisters doing now? **Lesson 3**

 Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38

Randa Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa Oh, hello Randa! Where are you? Are you at home?

Randa Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa What's mum doing?

Randa She's looking at a website. She wants to make a cake.

Sherifa Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

Randa No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa Is grandmother watching TV?

Randa Yes, she is. It's her favourite **programme⁽¹⁾** on now.

Sherifa Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?

Randa They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa Again? They are always taking selfies!

Randa I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she is listening to music on her Mp3 player.

Sherifa She's a good **dancer⁽²⁾**! What are you doing, Randa?

Randa I am talking to you!

Sherifa Oh yes!

Post-listening questions:

- 1** Do you think they are enjoying their time? Why?
- 2** If you were Sherifa, would you return home quickly to be with your family?



(1) برنامج

(2) راقصة

Pre-listening question: - What do you like to do when you have free time?

Read the conversation between Leila and Judy. Correct the mistakes.

Listen and check your answers.

WB page 97

Judy Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila Hi, Judy. I'm **in** the park with my family.



Judy What **are** you doing there?

Leila I'm **sitting** under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy **Are** your brothers sitting, too?

Leila No, they aren't. They're playing football.

Judy Is your dad **playing** football with them?

Leila No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy What's your mother doing?

Leila Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Leila will feel sad because her father isn't with them?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- What are you doing now?

Read the puzzle. Match the numbers with the people.

SB Page 39

Soha is not making a video call, but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology. Fatma has got long, curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Post-reading question:

- In which room are the girls sitting?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like using new technology? Why/ Why not?

Read about Wael and Mazin. Who has got a laptop?

I love **technology**⁽¹⁾! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's Computer Studies! At break and **lunchtime**⁽²⁾, I **stay**⁽³⁾ in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

I love **nature**⁽⁴⁾. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and **insects**⁽⁵⁾ all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13**Post-reading questions:**

- 1 What does Mazin like?
- 2 Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why/ Why not?



SB Page 40



(1) التكنولوجيا

(2) وقت الغداء

(3) يبقى/يقيم

(4) الطبيعة

(5) حشرات

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

insect /ɪnsekt/

Life Skills

1. What do you think of Wael and Mazin?

.....

2. Who do you think needs help?

.....

3. What advice can you give him?

.....



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love I like watching trees, animals and flowers.
a) technology b) games c) nature d) sport
2. Pupils should wear their school at school.
a) uniforms b) forms c) reforms d) performs
3. Never to your friend during lessons.
a) talk b) take c) use d) make
4. We can use a if we don't know the meaning of a word.
a) puzzle b) diary c) dictionary d) notebook
5. I'll go to the kitchen and a drink to my grandmother.
a) do b) mime c) watch d) bring
6. The boy went on the bus and to his mother.
a) waved b) stayed c) moved d) dropped
7. I like to write that pen. It's really good.
a) in b) for c) to d) with
8. If I want to ask my teacher, I my hand up.
a) fly b) wave c) put d) drop
9. My little sister always water on the floor.
a) drops b) writes c) gives d) brings
10. A: How long did you in Alexandria? B: Two weeks.
a) stay b) say c) leave d) visit
11. We usually have our sandwiches break.
a) by b) at c) in d) with
12. It's usually in summer.
a) dark b) cold c) sunny d) cool

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is a firefighter. He always wears his at work.
a) rule b) uniform c) form d) picture
2. I always listen to songs my MP3 player.
a) in b) on c) by d) with
3. Our teacher always smiles us. He's friendly.
a) with b) of c) at d) about
4. I many hobbies on holidays.
a) bring b) take c) make d) do
5. I usually notes during the lesson.
a) take b) help c) do d) bring
6. I like doing They make me think.
a) toys b) bikes c) kites d) puzzles
7. Mum the best cakes.
a) designs b) takes c) makes d) does
8. It's her favourite programme now.
a) on b) in c) with d) by
9. I like playing video games on my
a) kite b) MP3 player c) laptop d) dictionary
10. Students should learn how to use their in English classes.
a) hobbies b) posters c) puzzles d) dictionaries
11. I use my phone send text messages to my friends.
a) to b) for c) by d) at
12. I always advice to my little brother.
a) get b) bring c) take d) give

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسرين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

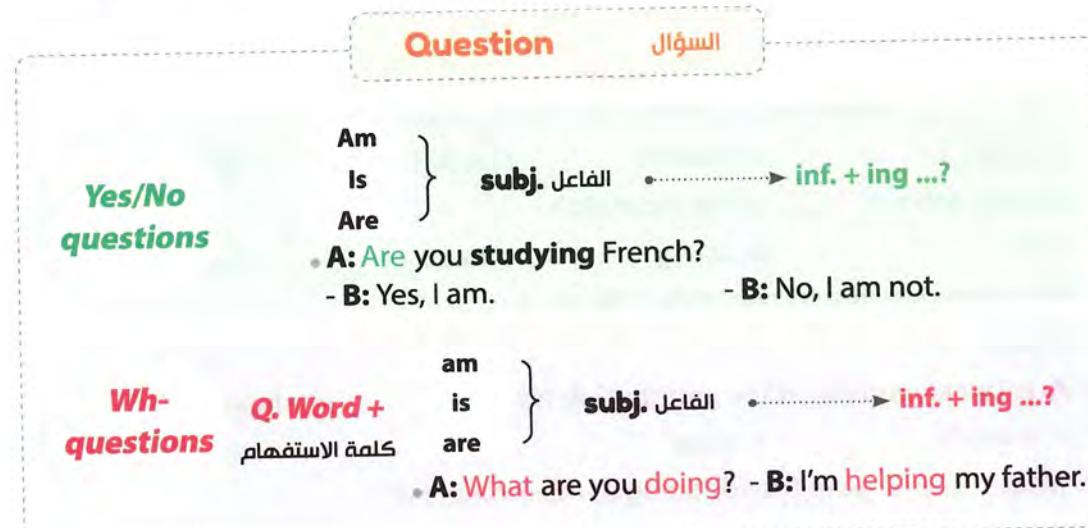
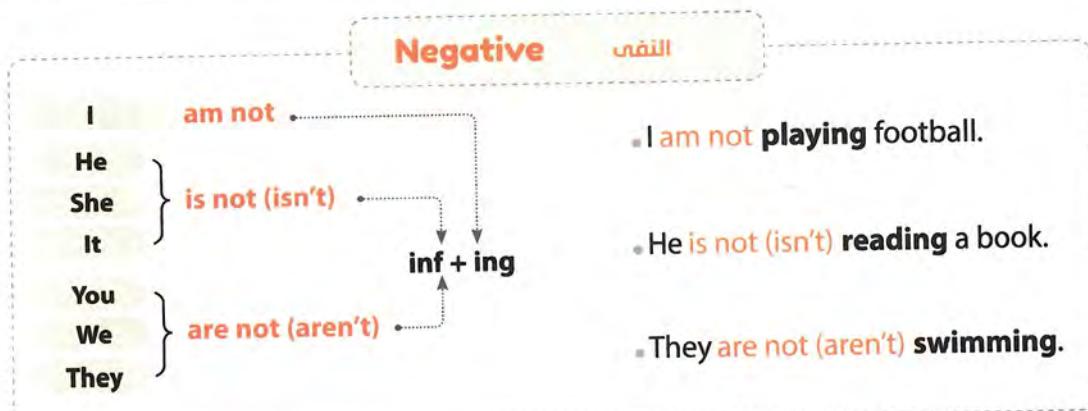
الاسئلة



C Language

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1** A: You are taking a selfie? B: No, I am writing an email. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال لوجود علامة استفهام.

2 Why is Sara cry? (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (crying) لأن is يتبعها فعل مضارف إليه (ing).

3 He doesn't sending a text message. (.....)
- الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't) لأن الفعل sending آخره (ing).

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. taking a photo?
a) She is b) Is she c) She has d) Has she
2. A: Is she watching TV? B: No, she
a) is b) isn't c) does d) doesn't
3. She is not a video call, but she is talking to her friend.
a) making b) makes c) make d) to make
4. Be quiet! Your little brother
a) sleeps b) sleep c) is sleeping d) has slept
5. Sally her homework at the moment. She is cooking.
a) doesn't do b) does c) is doing d) isn't doing
6. We watching TV, but we are making lunch.
a) don't b) haven't c) aren't d) isn't
7. What is John at the moment?
a) do b) doing c) does d) did
8. A: Are you wearing brown shoes? B: Yes, I
a) am b) is c) are d) was
9. A: Is Tamer working at the moment? B: No, he washing his car.
a) doesn't b) does c) is d) isn't
10. What your friends doing at the moments?
a) do b) have c) are d) is

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He isn't study his lessons now. (.....) الدالة المدلية
2. Does your brother sleeping now? (.....) الكلمة المليئة
3. He is writing emails at the moment? (.....)
4. What games do you playing online? (.....) الكلمة المليئة
5. A: Are you eating? B: Yes, I do. (.....)
6. What are the girls does now? (.....) الكلمة المليئة

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكن الطالب من حل أسلمة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your friend.

السؤال والإجابة عن صديقك.

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد

← online



Are you sitting next to your best friend?

هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟

Yes, I am.

نعم.

Is she wearing black shoes?

هل هي ترتدي حذاء أسود؟

No, she isn't.

لا.

What are your friends doing?

ماذا يفعل أصدقاؤك؟

They are watching TV.

إنهم يشاهدون التلفاز.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi, Judy. (1).....

Judy : The park! (2).....?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree in the park. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : (3)..... They are playing football.

Judy : (4).....?

Leila : No, my father isn't sitting with us. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mother doing?

Leila : (5).....



2. Write it right

1. How to write about what your family are doing now.

كيفية الكتابة عن ما تفعله عائلتك الآن.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- My father is (الوظيفة).
- I have got (العدد) brothers and (العدد) sisters.
- My mother is (ما تقوم به). My father is (ما يقوم به).

Writing tips

Try reading your paragraph out loud to make sure it makes sense.
حاول قراءة فقرتك بصوت عالٍ شاكل أن لها معنى.

Example

What your family are doing now

My name's Amal. I live in Cairo. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. I have got two brothers and no sisters. I am in preparatory one. My brothers go to primary school. We are a happy family. All of us are busy now. My mother is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner. She is a good cook. Her food is delicious. My father is watching TV. He's watching a football match at the moment. My brothers are playing video games. I am doing computer studies. It's my favourite subject. We are waiting for our dinner. We are very hungry now.

2. How to write about staying safe when you use technology.

كيفية الكتابة عن يقائقك أمناً عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا.

Example

How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information, like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your parents or your teacher.



1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Sameer and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too. My friend Hady is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone but it is in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Hamdy has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and brown. Can you see it?

A) Answer the following questions:

- ### 1. What is the best title for this text?

2. Do you think it is important to use computers at school? Why/ Why not?

3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

- a) MP3 player b) printer c) mobile d) charger

5. Hamdy is _____.

- a) a teacher b) a student c) a classmate d) Hady's friend

6. You can listen to music using a/an

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I always eat salad at lunchtime.

- a) an b) at c) of d) to**

- 3 I like watching trees and birds. I like

- a) water b) hobbies c) sports d) nature

- 3 This _____ gives me a lot of information about animals.

- d) charger**

- 4 The teacher always gives us some advice at the end of the lesson.

- a) gives b) follows c) takes d) makes

5. Don't litter in the river. We drink from it.

a) follow b) drop c) take d) mime

6. At break, students shouldn't in the class.

a) use b) bring c) stay d) leave

7. It is always very in summer.

a) hot b) cold c) rainy d) snowy

8. Manal's father is not today.

a) works b) working c) work d) worked

9. They aren't sleeping, but they their tablets.

a) use b) using c) are using d) aren't using

10. What's your mother ?

a) doing b) do c) did d) does

٢٣٠ - القاهرة

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. No, they are watching TV. They're playing football.
 2. What are you read online?
 3. My dad is at home. He is working today.
 4. Sally is playing chess online?

(.....) (.....)
(.....) (.....)
(.....) (.....)
(.....) (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

“What your family are doing now”



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مداد عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 Everyone should a hobby to do.
a) do b) have c) make d) give

2 Sally her tablet and sending photos to her friends.
a) uses b) using c) used d) is using

3 They taking selfies.
a) always have b) have always c) are always d) always are

STUDY



Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 41 - 43 | WB pages 99-101

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| boil (ed) (v) | يغلي | password (n) | كلمة المرور/السر |
| colourful (adj) | زاهي اللون/ملون | personal information | معلومات شخصية |
| instructions (n) | تعليمات/إرشادات | tea bag (n) | كيس شاي |
| kettle (n) | غلاية | telephone number | رقم التليفون |

المفردات الرئيسية

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------|
| answer > a call | يرد على مكالمة | make > friends with | يكون صدقة مع |
| come > home | يأتي إلى البيت | make > tea | يعمل شاي |
| keep > secret | يحافظ على سرية | say > hello | يقول أهلاً |
| look > interesting | يبدو شيئاً | stay > safe | يبقى آمناً |

العبارات اللغوية

Prepositions

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| a cup of tea | فنجان شاي | go onto a website | يدخل على موقع إلكتروني |
| agree with | يتتفق مع | take out | يخرج |
| ask for help | يطلب المساعدة | turn on | يشغل (جهاز) |
| example of | مثال لـ | worried about | قلق على |

حروف الجر

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- 1 Girls like to wear clothes.
- 2 I usually ask my teacher help .
- 3 It's important to safe online

stay - to - colourful - for


يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والعبارات اللغوية
وحوروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| drink | يشرب | drank |
| keep | يحافظ على | kept |

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Past simple

drank
kept

Past participle

drunk
kept

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عکسها |
|---------|------------|--------------------|-----------|
| agree | يُوافق | disagree | لا يُوافق |
| popular | محبوب/شائع | unpopular | غير محبوب |
| safe | آمن | dangerous | خطير |
| worried | قلق | calm | هدئ |

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موقع أسلحة امتحانية.



1 stop + v + ing

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- Stop **playing** on your phone and listen to me.

2 Why don't you + inf.?

لم لا....؟ (تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح).

- Why don't you **use** an MP3 player?



Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

التعريفات

Definitions

| | | |
|----------|-----------|--|
| password | كلمة السر | a word or numbers you use to go onto a website |
| secret | سر | something ⁽¹⁾ you do not want to tell ⁽²⁾ people about |

- (1) شيء ما
(2) يخبر

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word

الكلمة

Synonym (Meaning)

مرادفتها

agree

يُوافق

accept

يقبل

popular

محبوب/ شائع

famous

مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|------------------|---------|-----------------|----------------|
| colour (n) | لون | -ful | | تحويل الاسم لصفة | | colourful (adj) | ملون |
| person (n) | شخص | -al | | | | personal (adj) | شخص |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Are you good at using technology?

 **Read the instructions and put the pictures in the correct order.**

Lesson 5

SB page 41



How to send a text message:

- First, tap the messages icon.
- Write your text message.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Then tap the SEND icon.

2. Complete the text:

How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



Post-reading question: - How can you send an email?

Lesson 6

 **Work in pairs. Complete the table with this advice. Can you add any sentences?**

SB page 42

Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep ⁽¹⁾ your password ⁽²⁾ secret ⁽³⁾.
- Make friends with people you don't know online.
- Tell people your personal information ⁽⁴⁾ (e.g. telephone number ⁽⁵⁾).
- Send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.



| | |
|---------------|-----|
| حافظ على | (1) |
| كلمة المرور | (2) |
| سر | (3) |
| معلومات شخصية | (4) |
| رقم الهاتف | (5) |

Do (✓)

- Keep your password secret.

.....
.....

Don't (✗)

- Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

.....
.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to stay online.
a) safe b) worried c) angry d) save
2. " " is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.
a) Keyword b) Crossword c) Password d) Secret
3. Write the for how to make a cup of tea.
a) information b) messages c) icons d) instructions
4. Don't a phone call from someone you don't know.
a) ask b) reply c) answer d) write
5. To make a video call, your tablet on.
a) turn b) look c) come d) keep
6. We use the to make water hot.
a) cattle b) kite c) can d) kettle
7. Please keep it I don't want anyone to know about my plan.
a) secret b) secretary c) quite d) away
8. Don't tell anyone about your information on the internet.
a) personally b) personality c) personal d) person
9. Children shouldn't make friends people they don't know.
a) for b) with c) at d) of
10. If you have a problem, for help from a parent or teacher.
a) ask b) say c) stay d) keep
11. My mother is always worried me when I'm late outside.
a) on b) at c) for d) about
12. We water when we want to make tea.
a) stay b) say c) boil d) answer
13. Most children like to wear clothes.
a) bad b) unpopular c) dangerous d) colourful

C Language

Imperative

صيغة الأمر

Affirmative

الإثبات

- تبدأ صيغة الأمر في الإثبات بالفعل في المصدر أو **Always + inf.** بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- **Go** to the shop.

- **Open** the door, please. / Please, **open** the door.

- **Always follow** school rules.

- Nelly, **tidy** your room, please.

Negative

النفي

- وتبعد صيغة الأمر في النفي بـ **(Don't/Never + inf.)** ثم الفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- **Don't go** to the shop.

- **Don't open** the door, please. / Please, **don't open** the door.

- **Never come** to school late.

- **Don't speak** loudly, Omar.



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Following your school rules, Basmala. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Follow**) لأنها صيغة أمر و هي تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

2 Didn't talk during the lesson. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Don't**) لأنها صيغة أمر منفي.

3 Ali, brings some water, please. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**bring**) لأن **Ali** هنا مخاطب، وبعد لها فعل أمر يبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. on your tablet to make a video call. (الملحوظة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) Turns b) Turn c) Turning d) Turned
2. shout. My father is asleep. (الصورة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) Don't b) Not c) Do d) Often
3. To send a text message, the SEND icon. (الرسالة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) tap b) tapping c) tapped d) to tap
4. photos to people you don't know. (الرسالة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) Send b) Don't send c) Didn't send d) Sending
5. Lara, your password secret. (الكلمة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) kept b) keeping c) keep d) keeps
6. Use technology and safe online. (الكلمة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) to stay b) staying c) stayed d) stay
7. Don't a phone call from someone you don't know. (الكلمة ٣ - ٣٣)
a) answer b) answering c) answers d) answered
8. a few minutes preparing yourself for exercises. (المفهوم ٣ - ٣٣)
a) Spends b) Spend c) Spending d) Spent
9. First, some water in a kettle. (المفهوم ٣ - ٣٣)
a) putting b) to putting c) to put d) put
10. write on your desk, keep it clean. (المفهوم ٣ - ٣٣)
a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Never d) Can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Don't eating when you use a computer. (الملحوظة ٣ - ٣٣)
2. Taking out the tea bag. (الملحوظة ٣ - ٣٣)
3. Boils the water, Nada. (دور سعيد ٣ - ٣٣)
4. Tamer! Didn't leave your toys here. ()
5. Make noise in the library. (الكلمة ٣ - ٣٣)
6. Don't been rude to other people. ()

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 4**Lessons
(5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is asking Lamiaa about Reem, Sara and Aya.

Sherief : What are Reem and Sara doing?

Lamiaa : (1).....

Sherief : Again! They are always taking selfies. (2).....?

Lamiaa : Aya is listening to her MP3 player.

Sherief : Do you like taking selfies, Lamiaa?

Lamiaa : (3).....

Sherief : (4).....?

Lamiaa : Because my phone camera isn't good.

Sherief : Can we take a selfie together with my phone?

Lamiaa : (5).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, the TV on to watch the new film.

- a) make b) keep c) turn d) stay

2. You should keep your secret.

- a) sport b) food
c) friends d) password

3. It is good to new friends.

- a) make b) do c) stay d) spend

4. Our English book interesting, so lots of people use it.

- a) takes b) makes c) looks d) asks

5. Stay safe when you use

- a) puzzle b) password c) technology d) secret

6. We use the kettle to water.

- a) keep b) stay c) look d) boil

7. Don't photos to people you don't know.

- a) talk b) write c) send d) click

8. He a story now.

- a) read b) reads c) has read d) is reading

9. Look! the car is very fast.

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do your parents sitting under the tree? (.....)

2. There are some juice in the bottle. (.....)

3. Don't to use your phone in class. (.....)

4. Sally, writes your name on your book. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

بيان عن نهاية الكتاب

- 1** When the mobile rings, I like to the call.
a) send b) write c) answer d) make

2 Stay safe you use technology.
a) when b) which c) how d) why

3 Toka, come to school late.
a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) can't

Language

Vocabulary

| | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| 3D printer | طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد | There is/There are: |
| personal information | معلومات شخصية | Affirmative • There is a printer. |
| phone charger | شاحن الهاتف | • There are some boys here. |
| popular | محبوب/ شائع | Negative • There isn't a charger. • There aren't any tablets. |
| click on the icon | يُنقر على الأيقونة | Questions Is there an MP3 player? Are there any mobile phones? |
| instructions | تعليمات | The present continuous: The present continuous: |
| school uniform | الزي المدرسي | Affirmative She is writing an email now. I'm doing my homework. |
| keep ... secret | حافظ على سرية | Negative They aren't studying. I'm not eating now. |
| kettle | غلاية | Questions What are you doing now? Is Ali watching TV now? |
| send a text message | إرسال رسالة نصية | Imperative: Go to the shop. Huda, boil that water. |
| stay safe | ابق امنا | Negative Don't boil that water, Huda. Please, don't open the door. |
| take a selfie | التقط صورة شخصية | |
| make a video call | تalking to someone on video | |
| tap on the icon | يُنقر على الأيقونة | |
| mobile phone | تليفون محمول | |
| mouse | فأرة الكمبيوتر | |
| technology | الเทคโนโลยيا | |
| MP3 player | مشغل ام بي ثري | |
| nature | الطبيعة | |
| whiteboard | السبورة البيضاء | |
| password | كلمة المرور / السر | |
| write an email | إعداد رسالة بريد إلكتروني | |

Skills

Ask and answer questions about your friend:

- A: Are you sitting next to your best friend?
- B: Yes, I am.
- A: Is she writing with a pen or pencil?
- B: She is writing with a pencil.
- A: What are they doing?
- B: They are watching TV.

**A****Listening****1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Rana likes
 a) biology b) technology c) science d) maths
2. She likes playing
 a) video games b) basketball c) tennis d) football
3. Rana plays on her
 a) laptop b) tablet c) TV d) computer
4. Her favourite subject is
 a) English b) maths c) social studies d) computer studies.

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستهلاع في نهاية الكتاب

B**Language Functions****2 Complete the following dialogue:****Salwa is telling Nada that she is going to the library.**

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

Nada : Hello, Salwa. Where are you going?

Salwa : Hello, Nada. (1).....

Nada : (2).....?

Salwa : I'm going to the library to read a story. What about you?

Nada : (3).....

Salwa : Why are you going to the club?

Nada : I'm going to the club to play basketball.

Salwa : (4).....?

Nada : Yes, I'm in the school basketball team. Do you want to come with me?

Salwa : (5).....

C**Reading Comprehension****3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g., telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you are in trouble?

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You should keep your secret.
a) text b) email c) poster d) password
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) telephone b) instructions
c) technology d) call
6. The underlined word "**parent**" means
a) mum or dad b) uncle
c) teacher d) mum's sister



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will send you a/an message soon.
الكلمة المضمة
a) text b) test c) photo d) icon
2. A is a small computer that you carry around.
الكلمة المضمة
a) mouse b) mobile c) laptop d) charger
3. the icon on your mobile phone.
المعنى المضمن
a) Click b) Tap c) Look d) Make
4. Young people like to a selfie with their smart phones.
المعنى المضمن
a) print b) keep c) take d) make
5. My little brother loves , so he spends a lot of time in the garden.
المعنى المضمن
a) nature b) future c) furniture d) culture

6. I can boil water in the to make tea.
- a) laptop b) kettle c) charger d) radio
7. The opposite of the word "safe" is ".....".
- a) false b) different c) dangerous d) depressed
8. She would like video games.
- a) play b) to play c) playing d) played
9. Ahmed is a text message to his father.
- a) send B) sends c) sent d) sending
10. too much TV!
- a) Watch b) Not watch c) Watching d) Don't watch

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. First, putting some water in a kettle. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠١٣
2. Ali, didn't go out. It's raining outside. (.....)
3. What she is cooking now? (.....)
4. Can I have any water? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠١٣



Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Technology makes our life easy"



Assess your
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



November Model

1

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Amr about his favourite sports star.

Ali : Who is your favourite sports star?

Amr : (1).....

Ali : What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

Amr : (2).....

Ali : (3).....?

Amr : He plays for Liverpool Team.

Ali : (4).....?

Amr : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

Ali : Do you want to be like him?

Amr : (5).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plane is very It can go at 900 km/h.

- a) tall b) long c) weak d) fast

2. Alice is the main of the story.

- a) crater b) character c) adventure d) book

3. My cousin's hair is not straight. It is

- a) blond b) short c) long d) curly

4. You can your mobile using a phone charger.

- a) charge b) change c) hear d) choose

5. You must keep your password

- a) easy b) famous c) secret d) known

6. You can a video call to your brother in Dubai.

- a) do b) make c) send d) write

7. His father has got a white long on his face.
 a) bread b) board c) beard d) broad
8. there a mouse next to the laptop?
 a) Is b) Has c) Are d) Does
9. Hamza got curly hair.
 a) is b) have c) was d) has
10. At the moment, students to a story.
 a) listened b) are listening c) listens d) listen

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My brother is read a book at the moment. (.....)
2. I was sitting in a cafe now. (.....)
3. Didn't talk to strangers. (.....)
4. A: Are there a tablet in your classroom? B: Yes, there is. (.....)
5. What is Adel do at the moment? (.....)

Part 2
Final Revision



Check your ANSWERS





قم بمراجعة
أهم المفردات
والقواعد اللغوية
والمهارات وحل
المزيد من الأسئلة
ال الخاصة بالوحدتين
الثالثة والرابعة عن
طريق الذهاب لجزء
المراجعة الشهرية
بملحق التقويم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need paper for the

| | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| a) camera | b) screen | c) printer | d) mouse |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
2. The lion is a animal.

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| a) kind | b) scary | c) friendly | d) worry |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
3. My little daughter has got a big

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| a) smell | b) smile | c) small | d) smelt |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
4. My grandfather has got a big on his mouth.

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|
| a) beard | b) hair | c) moustache | d) eye |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|
5. It's important to stay online.

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| a) safe | b) worried | c) angry | d) colourful |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
6. You can a selfie on your mobile.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| a) help | b) make | c) run | d) take |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
7. video games is my favourite hobby.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| a) Giving | b) Playing | c) Doing | d) Making |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
8. throw rubbish in the street.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| a) Never | b) Doesn't | c) Didn't | d) Aren't |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
9. A: Can you phone me at 6:00 pm? B: No, I

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| a) can | b) doesn't | c) can't | d) didn't |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
10. My best friend short, dark hair.

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|
| a) has got | b) have got | c) got | d) is |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali have got lots of books. (.....)
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (.....)
3. Ola is write a paragraph at the moment. (.....)
4. There isn't some cheese. (.....)
5. Where can we meeting today? (.....)

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Amir about using technology in his school.

Ahmed : Do you use technology at your school?

Amir : (1) We use tablets.

Ahmed : Really! Can you use a tablet?

Amir : (2)

Ahmed : (3) ?

Amir : We use tablets in all subjects.

Ahmed : (4) ?

Amir : Yes, my classroom has got a smart board.

Ahmed : Do you use mobile phones at class?

Amir : (5) We can't use them.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for the passage?

2. Who does Salah talk to?

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mohamed Salah gives money to people.

- a) poor
 - b) rich
 - c) clean
 - d) happy

5. "Fast" is the opposite of

- a) short
 - b) weak
 - c) slow
 - d) friendly

6. Mohamed Salah has got hair.

- a) curly
 - b) white
 - c) straight
 - d) blond

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Keeps your password secret. (.....)

2. There aren't some books. (.....)

3. Does she like watch TV? (.....)

4. Has your father get a beard? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

©-CEM 2010

"Your favourite sports star"



Unit 5

Holidays

Objectives of the unit

Reading A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English

Tapescripts



Writing An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday

Listening A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out

Speaking Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news

Language The past simple

Values Respect

Issues Environmental awareness

STUDY



Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

● قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

● قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهب لمحة التقويم وتنسيق الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| bat (n) | خفافش | make a sandcastle | يصنع قلعة رملية |
| cave (n) | كهف | ride a bike | يركب دراجة |
| climb a mountain | يتسلق جبل | river (n) | نهر |
| delicious (adj) | لذيذ | see a camel | يرى جملأ |
| desert (n) | صحراء | sleep in a tent | ينام في خيمة |
| forest (n) | غابة | swim in the lake | يسباح في البحيرة |
| have a picnic | يقوم بنزهة خلوية | visit a family | يزور أسرة |
| jungle (n) | أدغال/غابة كثيفة الأشجار | waterfall (n) | شلال |

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| dark (adj) | مظلم | museum (n) | متحف |
| echo (n) | صدى الصوت | quiz (n) | اختبار مصغر |
| fantastic (adj) | رائع | turn (n) | دور |
| hotel (n) | فندق | warm (adj) | دافئ |
| map (n) | خريطة | weather (n) | طقس |

المفردات الإضافية

Prepositions

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------|
| a place with | مكان به | on the beach | على الشاطئ/البلاج |
| call out | ينادي | ride on a camel | يركب جملأ |
| frightened of | خائف من | search for | يبحث عن |
| in the rocks | في الصخور | think of | يفكر في |

حروف الجر

Choose and complete: (with – warm – hotel – mountains)

- Check Point
- 1 The weather is today.
 - 2 Climbing is a dangerous sport.
 - 3 The beach is a place a lot of sand and water .

يهدف هذا
التدريب لقياس
فهمك للمفردات
الرئيسية والإضافية
وحوروف الجر

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | P.P. | Present | Past simple | P.P. |
|----------|-------------|-------|---------|-------------|-------|
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten | يركب | rode |
| have/has | يملك/لديه | had | had | يرى | saw |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard | يتحدث | spoke |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عکسها |
|-------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| get into/in | يدخل في | go out of | يخرج من |
| quiet | هدئ | noisy | صاخب |

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 called

is called

We visited a city **called** Marrakesh. My friend is **called** Mohammed.

التي تسمى/ الذي يسمى

يسمى

2 would ('d) like to + inf.

يود أن

Where **would** you **like to go**? I'd like to **go** to the beach.

3 when

عندما (للوقت)

When I was eight, I went to Siwa.

4 where

حيث (للمكان)

A forest is a place **where** there are lots of trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Check Point
- 1 I'd like Al Azhar Park in Cairo.
a) visit b) visiting c) to visit d) to visiting
 - 2 My teacher Mohammed is from Giza.
a) calling b) called c) is called d) calls
 - 3 We will visit the village my grandfather was born.
a) which b) that c) where d) when

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



Countries/ Cities/ Places

بلاد/ مدن/ أماكن

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| Al Azhar Park | حدائق الأزهر | Marrakesh | مدينة مراكش (المغرب) |
| Djara cave | كهف الجارة | Morocco | دولة المغرب |
| Egypt | مصر | Siwa | واحة سيوة |
| Hurghada | مدينة الغردقة | the Sahara Desert | الصحراء الكبرى |

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|-----------|---------|-------------------|---------|
| get into | يدخل في | enter | يدخل |
| delicious | لذيذ | tasty | لذيذ |
| fantastic | مدهش | amazing | مدهش |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|--------------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|------------------|----------------|
| frighten (v) | يخيف | -ed | | تحول الفعل لصفة | | frightened (adj) | خائف |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.



| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة |
|--------|--------|--------------|-----------------|
| desert | صحراء | dessert | حلوى |
| quiet | هدئ | quite | إلى حد ما |
| hear | يسمع | here | هنا |
| bat | خفافش | boat | قارب |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- A place with a lot of sand but no water. What is it?

Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places?

SB page 45

Taha Guess⁽¹⁾ where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.



Sara Are there monkeys in the trees?



Taha No. It's very dark and quiet.



Sara Are you in a forest⁽²⁾?

Taha Yes, I am!

Sara My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand⁽³⁾.

Taha I know! You're in the desert⁽⁴⁾.

Sara No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

Taha You're on the beach⁽⁵⁾!

يَخْنُون (1)

Sara That's right.

غَابَة / أَدْغَال (2)

Taha Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo)

رَمَال (3)

Hello! (echo comes twice)

الصَّدْرَاء (4)

Sara That's easy. You're in a cave⁽⁶⁾! Can you see any bats⁽⁷⁾?

الشَّاطِئ (5)

Taha No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

كَهْف (6)

خَفَافِيش (7)



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

desert /dezərt/ cave /keɪv/ echo /ekəʊ/

Post-listening question:

- Have you ever been in a cave? If yes, how did you feel?

- How was your last summer holiday?

 Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions:

SB page 46

My holiday photos

1. Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle⁽¹⁾. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave⁽²⁾ because she was frightened!



يصنم قلعة رملية (1)

يدخل الكهف (2)

يقوم بنزهة خلوية (3)

يتسلق جبل (4)

ينام في خيمة (5)

2. In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic⁽³⁾ in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.



3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain⁽⁴⁾. We saw camels and slept in a tent⁽⁵⁾ in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

sandcastle /'sændka:səl/

frightened /fraɪtənd/

delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/

Post-reading questions:

- 1 When did they visit their uncle?
- 2 What activities did they do at Siwa?

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you go last summer?

 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 103



Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I **rode** on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana

Post-reading question:

- What's this email about?

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Morocco /mə'rɒkəʊ/

Marrakesh /mə'rækɛʃ/

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ● Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is very high and there's lots of water in it. ٢٠٢٣ بور سعيد
- a) beach b) cave c) lake d) waterfall
2. " " is a place inside the mountain. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) Cave b) River c) Lake d) Waterfall
3. The is my favourite place to go in summer to swim. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) cave b) mountain c) beach d) desert
4. Children like to build on the beach. ٢٠٢٣ دمياط
- a) mountains b) lakes c) waterfalls d) sandcastles
5. A is a tropical forest with lots of trees and plants. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
- a) desert b) waterfall c) cave d) jungle
6. People don't like to go caves because they are dark. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) out of b) by c) for d) into
7. We usually a picnic at the weekend. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) swim b) find c) have d) make
8. Most children like playing the beach. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) of b) for c) on d) to
9. Last summer, the was very hot. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) sandcastle b) weather c) picnic d) game
10. Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was ! ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) frightened b) delicious c) dark d) quiet
11. We sleep in tents when we go to the ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) villa b) hotel c) flat d) desert
12. We had an English every Sunday, so I have to study hard every day. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) quiz b) camp c) taste d) ride
13. Boys like to their bikes on holidays. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) ride b) build c) see d) make

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother makes food. We all like it.

٢٠٢٣ الدقائق

- a) bad b) delicious c) unknown d) sad

2. When we went camping, my brother a very high mountain.

٢٠٢٣ الإسكندرية

- a) climbed b) chopped c) rode d) bought

3. We went camping in the desert and slept in a there.

٢٠٢٣ المنوفية

- a) tent b) lake c) river d) kitchen

4. There are a lot of trees in the

٢٠٢٣ الشرقية

- a) jug b) sky c) jungle d) weather

5. There isn't any water in the

- a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea

6. Our garden is a good place a lot of trees.

- a) with b) for c) by d) to

7. A is a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies around at night.

- a) boat b) bat c) bait d) bite

8. It's very and quiet in the forest. I can't see anything.

- a) tasty b) delicious c) safe d) dark

9. I saw some boys swimming in the

- a) mountain b) forest c) lake d) desert

10. Many people like to on camels.

- a) ride b) drive c) climb d) swim

11. It was my favourite holiday! It was

- a) dark b) fantastic c) terrible d) bad

12. I'm trying to find the park on the

- a) picnic b) map c) desert d) cave

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم باجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.
- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لتحدث عن فعل حدث في الماضي وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين في الماضي.
- I **visited** my uncle yesterday.

1 Verb "to be":

| | | | | | |
|-----|--|-------------|-------------|------|------------------|
| I | | frightened. | | We | early. |
| He | | hungry. | Affirmative | You | at school. |
| She | | a nurse. | الإثبات | They | quiet. |
| It | | big. | | | |
| I | | sad. | | We | late. |
| He | | thirsty. | Negative | You | weren't at home. |
| She | | a teacher. | النفي | They | noisy. |
| It | | small. | | | |

wasn't = was not

weren't = were not

Yes/No Questions:

السؤال بمعنى هل:

+ Affirmative

They ~~were~~ happy.

She ~~was~~ frightened.

? Question

Were ~~they~~ happy?

Was ~~she~~ frightened?



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 There are a lot of people on the beach last holiday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود (last) وهي تدل على الماضي.

2 Ali didn't at the park last Monday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لأنه لا يوجد فعل في المصدر.

2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

Affirmative

الإثبات

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- I arrived late for school.

لاحظ

تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

1

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

ت تكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) لل مصدر:

| | | |
|-------|---|---------|
| live | ► | lived |
| visit | ► | visited |
| study | ► | studied |

| | | |
|------|---|--------|
| eat | ► | ate |
| buy | ► | bought |
| take | ► | took |

2

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

ي تغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة:

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

- في الماضي (yesterday) - منذ (ago) ... - العا ضي ... last - أمس (today)

- in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010)

- I bought this car in 2015. - We visited Luxor 2 years ago.

Negative

النفي

نضم (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ► did not (didn't) + inf. +

- You didn't buy a new notebook.



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 She don't go to school yesterday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't) لوجود كلمة (yesterday) الدالة على الماضي البسيط.

2 I watched a scary movie next weekend. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لأن فعل الجملة (watched) في الماضي.

3 Salma didn't visited her aunt last Friday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن (didn't) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. I to Aswan last winter.

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

- a) went b) go c) goes d) going

2. your friends ready for the exam last week?

٢٠٢٣ الدقهلية

- a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Were

3. Yesterday, we didn't our lessons.

٢٠٢٣ الجيزة

- a) studied b) study c) studying d) studies

4. Mona to school yesterday because she was ill.

٢٠٢٢ بنى سويف

- a) not come b) doesn't come c) don't come d) didn't come

5. We camped in the forest and in a tent.

٢٠٢٢ كفر الشيخ

- a) sleep b) sleeps c) slept d) sleeping

6. When I eight, we went to Siwa.

٢٠٢٣

- a) was b) am c) is d) are

7. We swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm.

٢٠٢٣

- a) aren't b) weren't c) didn't d) don't

8. Sally happy at the party yesterday.

٢٠٢٣

- a) has b) is c) was d) were

9. My grandmother a nurse. She was a doctor.

٢٠٢٣

- a) wasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) hasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. He visit his friends yesterday. (.....)
- ٢٠٢٣ بور سعيد
2. Suzy doesn't like swimming when she was young. (.....)
- ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
3. They travelled by car. They walked. (.....)
- ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
4. I rode on a camel. That is fun. (.....)
- ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
5. Rana and Mayada didn't at school yesterday. (.....)
- ٢٠٢٣
6. They didn't climbed the tree. (.....)

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last week, we them some presents. ٢٠٢٢ الشرقية
- a) give b) gives c) gave d) giving
2. He didn't the prize last week. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) win b) won c) winning d) wins
3. We Port Said last year. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
- a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
4. He at home last week. ٢٠٢٢ الفريبية
- a) were b) had c) was d) is
5. She in Alexandria when she was a little girl. ٢٠٢٢ كفر الشيخ
- a) lives b) lived c) living d) is living
6. Last summer, the weather hot. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
- a) was b) were c) is d) are
7. My family a fantastic holiday in Morocco last summer. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
- a) are having b) having c) have d) had
8. I Pizza for dinner last night. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
- a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eaten
9. We in the sea because it was too cold. ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
- a) didn't swim b) swam c) don't swim d) swim

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They study for two hours last night. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ الإسماعيلية
2. They don't visit their uncle a week ago. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
3. Ali didn't at school yesterday. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
4. We went to the theatre next week. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ الإسماعيلية
5. Were you wear your jacket last night? (.....) ٢٠٢٣ الدقهلية
6. We played games and rides bikes. (.....) ٢٠٢٣ المنوفية

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills



Write it right

How to write about your last weekend.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص).
- We went by (الوسيلة).
- We ... (الأنشطة التي قمتم بها).
- We didn't ... (الأنشطة التي لم نقم بها).
- It was a fantastic holiday.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكن الطالب من كتابة مقدمة بشكل جيد.

كيف تكتب عن عطلتك الأسبوعية الماضية.



Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.
راجع الأخطاء الإملائية وأخطاء القواعد في فقرتك.

Example

Your last holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last holiday, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 5**Lessons
(1 & 2)

17

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** When did Ragab travel to Aswan?
 - a) Last week.
 - b) Last month.
 - c) Last winter.
 - d) Last summer.

- 2.** Who did Ragab travel with?
 - a) His friends.
 - b) His class.
 - c) His relatives.
 - d) His family.

- 3.** How did Ragab travel?
 - a) By train.
 - b) By bus.
 - c) By car.
 - d) By plane.

- 4.** What did Ragab buy from shops?
 - a) Tickets.
 - b) Souvenirs.
 - c) Food.
 - d) Fruit.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** I can hear my words again and again inside a
 - a) river
 - b) lake
 - c) forest
 - d) cave

- 2.** Can you sleep in a in the desert?
 - a) villa
 - b) hotel
 - c) flat
 - d) tent

- 3.** I on a camel in the forest when we had a picnic there.
 - a) drove
 - b) rode
 - c) went
 - d) flew

- 4.** I can't climb this It's very high.
 - a) forest
 - b) mountain
 - c) street
 - d) jungle

- 5.** You can enjoy sitting on the by the sea.
 - a) jungle
 - b) beach
 - c) mountain
 - d) river

- 6.** There's a lot of in the desert.
 - a) sand
 - b) castles
 - c) water
 - d) plants

- 7.** A is a place where water falls from a high place.
 - a) waterwheel
 - b) waterfall
 - c) lake
 - d) sea

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

٢٠٢٣ الفيوم

٢٠٢٣ كفر الشيخ

٢٠٢٣ بني سويف

8. She didn't to the beach yesterday.

- a) goes b) went c) gone d) go

9. you and your friends worried before the last exam?

- a) Was b) Are c) Were d) Did

10. When we arrived, it very windy.

- a) is b) was c) be d) were

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona went to the zoo next week. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠

2. Sara doesn't buy a camera yesterday. (.....)

3. When I am eight, I went to London. (.....)

4. I eat fish for lunch yesterday. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip you made"

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.

It's a/an

- a) cave b) echo c) mountain d) jungle

2 It's not good to your friends loudly in the street.

- a) call out b) search for c) think of d) swim in

3 My uncle Nabil is a doctor.

- a) calls b) calling c) called d) is called

STUDY

Watch a video

**Lessons 3 & 4**

SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 104 & 105

A Vocabulary**Key Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| camp (ed) (v) | يعسكن/يخيم | holiday flat (n) | شقة العطلة |
| castle (n) | قلعة | language school (n) | مدرسة لغات |
| climb up (ed) (v) | يصعد | student (n) | طالب |
| exciting (adj) | مثير | souvenir (n) | هدية تذكارية |
| holiday courses (n) | دورات في فترة الإجازة | view (n) | منظر طبيعي |

المفردات الرئيسية

| Additional Vocabulary | | | |
|-----------------------|--------|-----------------|------|
| dolphin (n) | دولفين | flag (n) | علم |
| enjoy (ed) (v) | يسعد | wonderful (adj) | رائع |

المفردات الإضافية**Check Point****Choose and complete:** **wonderful – castle – souvenirs – student**

- 1 I visited the It is very ancient.
- 2 We spent a time in Alexandria last summer.
- 3 I bought some from Khan El-Khalili.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions**العبارات اللغوية**

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------------|------------------|--------|------------------|-----------------|
| do > | a project | يقوم بعمل مشروع | make > | an advertisement | يقوم بعمل إعلان |
| | activities | يقوم بنشاطات | | a list | يقوم بعمل قائمة |
| have > | a holiday/time | يقضي إجازة/وقتًا | ride > | a horse | يركب حصانًا |

حروف الجر

| Prepositions | | | لقضاء عطلة |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| advertisement for | إعلان لـ | for a holiday | |
| a ride on | رحلة علىـ | get to | يصل إلىـ |
| by the lake/beach | بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ | go on holiday | يذهب في إجازةـ |
| find out | يكشفـ | in Arabic | باللغة العربيةـ |

Check Point

Choose and complete: **do – by – ride – for**

- 1 We can many activities in summer.
- 2 I read an advertisement a good job.
- 3 My father bought a new flat the beach.

يمهد هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتغيرات اللغوية
و دروس الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| learn | يتعلم | learnt |
| show | يعرض / يبين | showed |

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|-----------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| friendly | ودود | unfriendly | غير ودود |
| stay | يقيم | leave | يترك / يغادر |
| wonderful | رائع | terrible | فظيع / سيء جداً |

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Subject + first/last + past simple

أول/آخر مرة ...

- When I first **came** to the language school, I was not very good at English.
- I last **saw** my uncle three days ago.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثراً للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



Definitions

| | | |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| camp | يخيم/يععسكر | sleep for a time in a tent ⁽¹⁾ |
| castle | قلعة | a big, strong building ⁽²⁾ from the past |
| dolphin | دolphin | a friendly sea animal |
| holiday flat | شقة العطلة | a place to stay for a holiday |
| souvenir | هدية تذكارية | something you buy to remember ⁽³⁾ a holiday |
| view | منظر طبيعي | what you can see from a place |

التعريفات

- (1) خيّمة
- (2) مبنى
- (3) يُذكر

Places

| | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------------|------------------------|
| England | إنجلترا | London | لندن |
| France | فرنسا | the Cairo Tower | برج القاهرة |
| Germany | ألمانيا | the London Eye | عجلة لندن (معلم سياحي) |
| Jordan | الأردن | Windsor Castle | قلعة وندسور |

أماكن

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|-------------|--------|-------------------|-----------|
| interesting | شيق | exciting | مثير |
| wonderful | رائع | amazing/fantastic | محظى/رائع |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|---------------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|-------------------|----------------|
| advertise (v) | يعلن | -ment | | تحول الفعل لاسم | | advertisement (n) | إعلان |
| wonder (v) | يتعجب | -ful | | تحول الفعل لصفة | | wonderful (adj) | رائع |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word | الكلمة | Similar word | الكلمة المشابهة | هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى. |
|------|------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| camp | معسكر | comp | مشط | |
| view | منظر طبيعي | review | مقال نقد | |
| flat | شقة | flag | علم | |

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you go last holiday?



Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Hatem Hi, Yunis! How was your *holiday*⁽¹⁾?

Yunis Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem Where did you go?

Yunis I went to Jordan⁽²⁾ by plane.

Hatem Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis No, we stayed in a *holiday flat*⁽³⁾ by the beach.

We had a wonderful *view*⁽⁴⁾ from the windows.

Every morning, I saw *dolphins*⁽⁵⁾ in the sea.

Hatem Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old *castle*⁽⁶⁾. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.



Hatem How did you get to the castle?

Yunis We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem Did you buy any souvenirs?

Yunis Yes, I did. I bought this small *souvenir*⁽⁷⁾ for you.

Lesson 3

SB page 48

(1) جازة/علة

(2) الأردن

(3) شقة العطلة

(4) منظر

(5) دلافين

(6) قلعة

(7) هدية تذكارية

(8) علم

Hatem Oh, how interesting! Egypt's *flag*⁽⁸⁾ is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour—green, too. Thanks, Yunis!



Post-listening question:

- Where would you like to go next holiday?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:
castle /ka:səl/ souvenir /su:vənɪər/

Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you do on holiday?

 Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs.

SB page 50



Learn English in London!

- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses⁽¹⁾ are for one, two or three weeks.



I had a wonderful time at the language school⁽²⁾! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

My favourite place was Windsor Castle⁽³⁾. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen⁽⁴⁾!



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic.

I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye⁽⁵⁾, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.



When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects. I enjoyed⁽⁶⁾ speaking English!

Jurgen, Germany

Post-reading questions:

- Why do you think Mona didn't see the Queen?
- Why did Laura like the ride on the London Eye?
- How were Jurgen's lessons?

- | | |
|-----|---------------|
| (1) | دورات تدريبية |
| (2) | مدرسة لغات |
| (3) | قلعة وندسور |
| (4) | ملكة |
| (5) | عجلة لندن |
| (6) | يس揆تم بـ |

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 105



Hi Ali,

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time. I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now, I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now, I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England

Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list.

قم بالعمل في مجموعة. قم باكتشاف، أنشطة الإجازة التي يمكن للناس ممارستها في مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.

- Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt.

قم بالعمل الثنائي. قم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة في مصر.

1. Choose one activity you can do in Egypt.

اختر نشاطاً تستطيع فعله في مصر.

2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

صمم واتكتب إعلاناً وصورة عبر الإنترنت.

3. Show your advertisement to the class and talk about it.

اعرض إعلانك على الفصل وتحدث عنه.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a beautiful of the river from the top.
a) view b) review c) preview d) viewing
2. I bought many for my friends from Paris.
a) souvenirs b) caves c) menu d) hobbies
3. When we went camping, my brother up a very high mountain.
a) bought b) chopped c) rode d) climbed
4. A dolphin is a friendly animal.
a) wild b) land c) sea d) plant
5. I a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there.
a) drove b) rode c) went d) flew
6. Children like because they can play and enjoy themselves.
a) holidays b) courses c) advertisements d) flats
7. We went to Jordan and in a nice hotel.
a) lived b) enjoyed c) left d) stayed
8. Tourists like to visit places in a country.
a) unfriendly b) famous c) bad d) boring
9. We visited our uncle who lives the beach in Alexandria.
a) to b) for c) by d) of
10. Our new flat is It's cool.
a) wonderful b) boring c) bad d) ugly
11. When we went to Jordan, we took a to know every place there.
a) course b) flat c) flag d) map
12. We stay in a holiday when we travel to Hurghada.
a) activity b) flat c) course d) mountain
13. Egypt's is red, white and black.
a) flat b) mountain c) flag d) map

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a big, strong building from the past.
a) castle b) hotel c) souvenir d) desert
2. Most teachers ask us to projects for homework.
a) do b) make c) take d) see
3. Which holiday can people do in Egypt?
a) activities b) views c) souvenirs d) projects
4. Some slow learners take summer to be good at school subjects.
a) holidays b) camps c) views d) courses
5. You can search for a job in in newspapers.
a) adventures b) advertisements c) flats d) technology
6. I bought many for my friends from Paris.
a) souvenirs b) caves c) menu d) hobbies
7. should study their lessons well to be good at them.
a) Courses b) Visitors c) Students d) Parents
8. London is a/an city. Lots of people like to visit it.
a) boring b) exciting c) bad d) ugly
9. He a great time at Al Azhar Park.
a) had b) made c) rode d) did
10. Basmala is good at English because she goes to a/an school.
a) course b) activity c) language d) subject
11. I decided to buy something to that holiday.
a) have b) stay c) remind d) remember
12. My favourite activity was a ride the London Eye.
a) for b) at c) in d) on

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The Past Simple Tense Questions

الأسئلة في زمن الماضي البسيط

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + inf. ...?

- A: Did you **watch** TV last night?

- B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Was/Were + subject + ...?

- A: Was he at the cinema last week?

B: Yes, he was. B: No, he wasn't.

- A: Were they excited about the trip?

B: Yes, they were. B: No, they weren't.

2 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ► did + subject + inf. ...?

- A: What time **did** you **go** to bed?

- B: I **went** to bed at 10 o'clock.

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ► was/were + subject + ...?

- A: Where **were** you yesterday?

- B: I **was** at the cinema with my friends.



عند السؤال عن الفاعل في الماضي البسيط لا نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) بل نستخدم الماضي من الفعل الأساسي:

- Who **helped** you yesterday? - My mother helped me.



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 How did you travelled to Paris? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لوجود كلمة (did) التي يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

2 Where does he last week? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الماضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل مفرد.

3 Did you in London two days ago? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل جمع.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Where did you go on holiday summer?
 a) last b) next c) least d) the following ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
2. A: When she return to Cairo? B: Last Friday.
 a) does b) did c) do d) don't ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
3. Who Hassan see in the park last Tuesday?
 a) does b) did c) has d) have ٢٠٢٢ الاسماعيلية
4. Did Hany a mountain last year?
 a) climbing b) climb c) climbed d) climbs ٢٠٢٢ الجوفية
5. you ready for the exam yesterday?
 a) Do b) Did c) Was d) Were ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
6. How your last holiday?
 a) was b) did c) is d) does
7. A: Where did you go? B: I to Jordon.
 a) go b) goes c) going d) went
8. A: Did you watch TV? B: Yes, I
 a) don't b) do c) didn't d) did ٢٠٢٣ الجيزة
9. What did you for dinner last night?
 a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating ٢٠٢٣ الفيوم
10. A: Did you visit your family there? B: No, we
 a) did b) was c) didn't d) wasn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Which musical instrument did you played? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
2. Who did you saw last Monday? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
3. Did you and your family staying in a hotel? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
4. Where do you go last week? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
5. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٣ المنيوم
6. Did you at Alexandria last week? (.....)
 ٢٠٢٢ الفيوم

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميقن الطالب من
حل أسلحة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



Where did you go on holiday?

أين ذهبت في الإجازة؟

I went to Alexandria.

ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.



Did you swim in the sea?

هل قمت بالسباحة في البحر؟

Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.

نعم، ورأيت دلافينا أيضًا وقمت بالسباحة معه.



What food did you eat?

ما الطعام الذي أكلته؟

I ate a lot of fish.

أكلت الكثير من السمك.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الفيلم ٢٣

► Ahmed and Ibrahim are talking about the summer holiday he spent in Alexandria.

Ahmed : Did you go to Alexandria on holiday?

Ibrahim : Yes, I did.

Ahmed : (1).....?

Ibrahim : Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too.

Ahmed : (2).....?

Ibrahim : I ate fish.

Ahmed : Is fish cheap or expensive there?

Ibrahim : (3).....

Ahmed : Did you have a good time there?

Ibrahim : (4).....

Ahmed : When did you come back?

Ibrahim : (5).....



2. Write it right

How to write about your summer holiday

- Last summer, the weather was (حالة الطقس).
- We went to (المكان).
- It's a/an (صف المكان) place.
- We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was near the beach.
- We went to the beach. (الأفعال التي قمت بها على الشاطئ).
- My sister/brother (الأنشطة التي قام بها).
- We had a wonderful time there.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



كيفية الكتابة عن إجازتك الصيفية

Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar.

تحقق من القواعد اللغوية أو من عدم وجود أخطاء لغوية في فقرتك.

Example

What you did last summer

Last summer, the weather was very hot. Our father decided to take us to a nice place to have a wonderful time. We thought of lots of places, but we decided to go to Marsa Matrouh. It's a quiet and fantastic place. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. It was near the beach, so we didn't walk too long. We spent a good time on the beach. My little sister made a sandcastle. I swam in the sea whose water was very clean. My mother made us delicious food. My father and mother liked sitting on the beach. My sister and I played with a ball on the beach. We stayed for two weeks there. We enjoyed our time a lot.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"My summer holiday"

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 5** Lessons (3 & 4)

هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسلحة تراكمية تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرس.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city of London. I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle, but I did not see the Queen. I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer go to London?
2. What is the best title for this text?
3. Do you think the writer enjoyed the visit? Why/ Why not?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer bought a lot of from London's shops.
 a) castles b) eyes c) souvenirs d) shops
5. The opposite of the underlined word "fantastic" is
 a) wonderful b) amazing c) exciting d) terrible
6. The underlined word "there" refers to
 a) London b) English c) the Castle d) holiday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students many activities at their schools.
 a) do b) make c) write d) ride
2. I had a summer course and English well.
 a) had b) made c) learnt d) taught
3. Tourists buy before they go back to their countries.
 a) views b) dolphins c) souvenirs d) castles
4. I like English very much and I speaking it.
 a) hate b) enjoy c) leave d) stay
5. My children like to go a holiday to Hurghada.
 a) on b) in c) at d) about

القاهرة ٢٠١٣

6. I went to the desert and a horse there.
 a) did b) made c) rode d) climbed
7. A is an old building from the past.
 a) flag b) view c) souvenir d) castle
8. What did Nader in his office yesterday?
 a) found b) find c) finds d) finding
9. Sally at home last Friday?
 a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Does
10. Ahmed and Sami play tennis yesterday?
 a) Were b) Are c) Did d) Was

٢٠٢٣ كفر الشيخ

٢٠٢٣ البحيرة

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What did Younis see and did there? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. Where did she last summer? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. Where did Magdy spent the weekend? (.....) الفريدة ٢٠٢٣
4. Do you go on holiday last week? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An English course in London"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 How did you the castle?
 a) walk b) arrive c) get to d) go
- 2 I have two friends from England. I talk to them English.
 a) in b) at c) by d) with
- 3 Who with you yesterday?
 a) goes b) didn't go c) go d) going

STUDY

Watch a video



Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 - 53 | WB pages 106 - 108

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| busy (adj) | مزدحم | postcard (n) | بطاقة بريدية |
| continue (d) (v) | يستمر | sign (n) | لافتة |
| light (n) | ضوء/مصباح | snails (n) | قواقع |
| pass (ed) (v) | يمر/ يجتاز | tourist (n) | سائح |

المفردات الرئيسية

| Additional Vocabulary | | المفردات الإضافية | |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| bath time (n) | وقت الاستحمام | response (n) | رد فعل/استجابة |
| emotion (n) | شعور/عاطفة | theatre (n) | مسرح |
| happen (ed) (v) | يحدث | ticket (n) | تذكرة |
| play (n) | مسرحية | tired (adj) | متعب/مرهق |

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| be > back | يعود/يرجع | go to > sleep | يذهب للنوم |
| do > a journey | يفوض برحلة | have > a view of | يلقي نظرة على |
| follow > rules | يتبع القواعد | time | لديه وقت |

التعابيرات اللغوية

| Prepositions | | حروف الجر | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| for a holiday | لقضاء إجازة | go on a boat trip | يذهب في رحلة بالقارب |
| for example | على سبيل المثال | in bed | في السرير |
| get on | يركب على | on the train | في القطار |
| go in water | ينزل في الماء | on TV | في التلفزيون |

Choose and complete: for – theatre – light – tickets

- 1 We can see plays and shows at the
- 2 We can't enter the cinema without
- 3 My family went to Hurghada a holiday.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لاختبار فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية وحروف
الجر.

Check Point

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | | Past participle |
|---------|------------|-------------|--|-----------------|
| draw | يرسم | drew | | drawn |
| fall | يقع/يسقط | fell | | fallen |
| leave | يترك/يفادر | left | | left |

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | معندها |
|--------|--------|--------------------|-----------|
| closed | مغلق | open | مفتوح |
| lose | يخسر | win | يفوز/يكسب |

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثباتي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



Famous Places

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| Australia | أستراليا | the Louvre | متحف اللوفر |
| Canada | كندا | the Nile | النيل |
| Luxembourg Gardens | حدائق لوكسمبورج | the River Seine | نهر السين |
| Ramses Station | محطة رمسيس | the Science Museum | متحف العلوم |
| the Eiffel Tower | برج إيفل | the Valley of the Kings | وادي الملوك |

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|--------|-----------|-------------------|---------|
| closed | مغلق | locked | مغلق |
| pass | يمر/يجتاز | succeed | ينجح |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|----------|--------|--------|---------|----------------------|---------|--------------|----------------|
| tour (n) | جولة | -ist | | تحول الاسم لاسم فاعل | | tourist (n) | سائح |
| wind (n) | الرياح | -y | | تحول الاسم لصفة | | windy (adj) | كثير الرياح |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- How was your last holiday?

Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream?

Lesson 5

SB page 51

Man What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

Mazin I went to the zoo.

(1) ذلك شيء!

Man Oh, that's interesting⁽¹⁾! Did you enjoy the day?

(2) يا للهول! / يا للعناء!

Mazin No, I didn't.

(3) يا للأسف!

Man Oh, dear⁽²⁾. Why not?

(4) كم هو مثير!

Mazin Well, first we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

(5) أوه لا! / يا إلهي!

Man What a pity⁽³⁾! So you didn't see them?



Mazin No, we didn't. Then, we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.



Man What did you do next?



Mazin Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.



Man Wow! How exciting⁽⁴⁾!

Mazin Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man Oh, no⁽⁵⁾! What happened?

Mazin An elephant ate my ice cream!

Post-listening questions:

1 Why do you think Mazin didn't see the bats?

2 If you were Mazin, how would you feel when the elephant ate your ice cream?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think Paris is a great city for a holiday? Why/ Why not?

 **Read Fatma's email.**

SB page 52



From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza!

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails⁽¹⁾!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art⁽²⁾ at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards⁽³⁾. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light⁽⁴⁾ on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

snail /sneɪl/

Eiffel /'eɪfəl/

Luxembourg/ /'lʌksəm,bə:g/

Seine /seɪn/



(1) قواصم

(2) الفن/الرسم

(3) بطاقات بريدية

(4) ضوء/مصباح

Post-reading question:

- If you were Fatma, would you enjoy your holiday? Give reasons.

Pre-reading question: - Do you like travelling by train?

 Put the email into the correct order.

WB page 107



Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon!

Mazin



Post-reading question:

- How did Mazin travel to Aswan?

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Australia /ɒ'streɪliə/ station /steɪʃən/

Values

Look at these **signs**. What do they mean?

انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعني؟



1. Why do places have these rules for tourists?

لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائحين؟

2. Can you think of any more rules for tourists?

هل يمكنك التفكير في قواعد أكثر للسائحين؟

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This says, "Don't walk on the grass".

a) signal

b) list

c) sign

d) song

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

2. What school should we follow?

a) games

b) rules

c) gates

d) classes

البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

3. Ahmed doesn't have any time to lose. He is always

a) busy

b) free

c) easy

d) lazy

الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

4. come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains.

a) Thieves

b) Tourists

c) Bats

d) Lorries

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠

5. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a!

a) dear

b) really

c) no

d) pity

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

6. The children are sleeping now. They are bed.

a) with

b) for

c) in

d) to

7. I went to the shop to buy tea, but the shop was

a) opened

b) open

c) close

d) closed

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

8. It rained a lot, but the match

a) passed

b) continued

c) rode

d) slept

9. I sent my friend a on his birthday.

a) ticket

b) snail

c) postcard

d) sign

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

10. Some children like to play with on the beach.

a) snails

b) tickets

c) signs

d) rules

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

11. He went to the to watch the new play.

a) park

b) zoo

c) library

d) theatre

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

12. Please, tell me what

a) happened

b) showed

c) followed

d) slept

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

13. The bathroom is ready. It's time.

a) sign

b) light

c) bath

d) ticket

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Responding to good/bad news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة/السيئة

A) Good news: 😊 الأخبار الجيدة

| | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| How exciting! | كم هو مثير! |
| Really? | حقاً! |
| Wow! | رائع! |
| That's interesting! | ذلك شيق! |

B) Bad news: 😞 الأخبار السيئة

| | |
|--------------|------------------------|
| Oh, dear! | يا للهول! / يا إلهي! |
| Oh, no! | أوه لا! / يا إلهي! |
| What a pity! | يا للأسف! / يا للحسرة! |

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ★ Applying ★ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

٢٠٢٣ القليوبية

Nahla is very tired because she had a lot of work at home.

Nahla : Hello, Noha. Come in, please.

Noha : Hi, Nahla. (1)..... ?

Nahla : I didn't come to school today because I was very tired.

Noha : (2)..... ! Why?

Nahla : I had a lot of work at home.

Noha : Did you finish it?

Nahla : (3)..... *

Noha : Did your daughter help you?

Nahla : (4)..... *

Noha : (5)..... ?

Nahla : She didn't help me because she had a test.

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 5**Lessons
(5 & 6)

15.5



هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكيمية
تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرس.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is telling Sarah about her trip to Paris.

Sarah : What are you doing?

Nour : (1)

Sarah : Photos of your trip! (2)

Nour : I went to Paris.

Sarah : (3)

Nour : I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.

Sarah : What did you buy there?

Nour : (4)

Sarah : Can I see them?

Nour : (5)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: We didn't want to swim in the sea. B: What a!

- a) pity b) dear c) really d) no

2. Tourists usually stay in when they visit other countries.

- a) mountains b) hotels
c) tents d) caves

3. I will take holiday to be good at English.

- a) tours b) towers
c) courses d) schools

4. I a wonderful time last week.

- a) had b) made
c) did d) took

5. How exciting! Youssef his driving test.

- a) failed b) passed
c) planned d) found

6. We our weekend. It was wonderful.

- a) enjoyed b) joined c) made d) did

7. I can't see anything. There's no

- a) lit b) height c) light d) dark

8. A: you go to Alexandria? B: Yes, I did.

- a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Is

9. Did you basketball yesterday?

- a) play b) played c) playing d) are playing

10. Why he sad last night?

- a) is b) does c) was d) did

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They travelled by car. They walked.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

2. Where do you go last week?

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

3. How did your last weekend?

(.....)

4. Samy didn't came to school yesterday.

(.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

٢٠٢٣ الدقهلية

"Your last holiday"

 **Challenging Questions**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاناً عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 Ugh! You're eating!

- a) nails b) lights c) snails d) rules

2 There were many people from many countries on the train,

England and France.

- a) for example b) so c) because d) when

3 Where yesterday evening?

- a) you did b) did you c) you were d) were you



Al-Adwaa Test

on Unit **5**

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. When did you go to Jordan?
 - a) Last year.
 - b) Last holiday.
 - c) Last month.
 - d) Yesterday.

2. Where did you stay?
 - a) On a farm.
 - b) On the beach.
 - c) In a hotel.
 - d) In a holiday flat.

3. How were the places you visited?
 - a) Famous.
 - b) Boring.
 - c) Cool.
 - d) Busy.

4. How was your holiday?
 - a) Late.
 - b) Busy.
 - c) Great.
 - d) Ugly.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠١٣

Salma is telling Fatima about her visit to Alexandria.

Fatima : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Salma : (1).....

Fatima : (2).....?

Salma : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Fatima : (3).....?

Salma : I travelled by train.

Fatima : Did you swim in the sea?

Salma : (4).....

Fatima : What did you eat there?

Salma : (5).....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠١٣

Dear Azza,

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the gardens. We also went on a boat on the river. But, we did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought some postcards; I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What did Fatma buy from the busy market?

.....

3. Do you think Fatma enjoyed her holiday in Paris? Why? Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to

- a) picnic b) The Louvre c) Paris d) Eiffel Tower

5. Fatma bought a for Azza.

- a) souvenir b) postcard c) food d) museum

6. The busy market was Fatma's hotel.

- a) far from b) behind c) in front of d) next to

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, we have the longest in the world.

- a) sea b) waterfall c) river d) forest

2. They stay in a holiday by the beach.

- a) flat b) fly c) float d) fat

القاهرة ٢٠١٣

- ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
3. Sohaila didn't want to go into the because there were many bats.
 a) cave b) cafe c) shop d) club
4. These shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of
 a) waterfalls b) castles c) souvenirs d) caves
5. She bought a flat with a nice on the Nile.
 a) course b) queen c) review d) view
6. We went a boat trip last week.
 a) on b) of c) in d) at
7. You can see a lot of for holiday courses in newspapers.
 a) achievements b) advertisements c) signs d) experiments
8. I lunch with Yasmeen last Friday.
 a) have b) had c) having d) am having
9. They football yesterday.
 a) played b) play c) playing d) plays
10. A: Where did he in the desert? B: In a tent.
 a) sleep b) slept c) sleeping d) sleeps
- ٢٠٢٢ القليوبية
- ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It rain hard last night. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
2. She didn't at school yesterday. (.....) ٢٠٢٢ الفيوم
3. Where did you stayed? (.....) ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
4. Does your mother cook last night? (.....)



Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

٢٠٢٣ القاهرة

"A nice trip you had"



Assess your
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



Unit 6

Let's eat!

Objectives of the unit

- Reading** A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
- Writing** A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
- Listening** A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
- Speaking** Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
- Language** Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
- Life Skills** Decision making; problem solving
- Issues** Preventative health

Tapescripts





قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضوع أسلحة امتحانية.

قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسليم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| bring/brought (v) | يحضر | perfect (adj) | ممتاز |
| delicious (adj) | لذيذ | prefer (red) (v) | يفضل |
| equipment (n) | معدات | recipe (n) | وصفة طعام |
| fridge (n) | ثلاجة | review (n) | نقد/مقالة نقدية |
| ingredients (n) | مقادير / مكونات | sweet (adj) | حلو |

Cooking verbs أفعال الطهو

| add (ed) (v) | يضيف | bowl (n) | سلطانية |
|----------------|------------|--------------|-----------|
| boil (ed) (v) | يغلي | cup (n) | فنجان |
| cook (ed) (v) | يطهّر/يطبخ | saucepan (n) | قدر صغير |
| stir (red) (v) | يقلب | teaspoon (n) | ملعقة شاي |

Kitchenware أدوات المطبخ

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-------|
| instructions (n) | تعليمات/إرشادات | share (d) (v) | يشارك |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-------|

Kinds of food أنواع الأطعمة

Countable nouns أسماء معدودة

| | |
|--------|---------------|
| crisps | رقائق البطاطس |
| figs | تين |
| nuts | جوز/بندق |

Uncountable nouns أسماء غير معدودة

| | | | | | |
|---------|-------|-----------|------------|--------------|-----------|
| olives | زيتون | chocolate | شوكولاتة | hummus | حمص |
| peppers | فلفل | cinnamon | قرفة | rice pudding | أرز بودنج |
| raisins | زبيب | coconut | جوزة الهند | salad | سلطة |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

add – perfect – rice – peppers

- 1 My mother is a cook.
- 2 My sister bought green for salad.
- 3 I always prefer pudding for dessert.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس مهمتك
المفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

حروف الجر

Prepositions

| | | | |
|------------------|---------|----------------|--------------|
| cook for | يطبخ لـ | recipe for | وصفة طعام لـ |
| decide to + inf. | يقرر أن | put into | يضع في |

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|-----------|-------------|--------------------|-----------|
| boil | يغلي | freeze | يجمد |
| delicious | لذيذ | horrible | فظيع/كريه |
| healthy | صحي | unhealthy | غير صحي |
| perfect | ممتاز/مثالى | imperfect | غير مثالى |

Check Point

Choose and complete: **horrible – for – to**

- 1 I read a good recipe steak.
2 This cake is I can't taste it.

يهدف هذا
التدريب لقياس
فهمك لحروف
الجر والكلمات
وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضوع أسلمة امتحانية.



1 decide to + inf.

My father **decided to** buy a new car.

يقرر أن

2 Giving instructions

Add the sugar to the rice and **stir** again.

اعطاء تعليمات

عند اعطاء تعليمات نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.



Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|-----------|--------|-------------------|-----------|
| delicious | لذيذ | tasty | لذيذ |
| healthy | صحي | well | بصحة جيدة |

الكلمات ومرادفتها

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word الكلمة | Suffix اللاحقة | Function الوظيفة | The new word الكلمة الجديدة |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| equip (v) يجهز | -ment | تحويل الفعل لاسم | equipment (n) معدات |
| health (n) صحة | -y | تحويل الاسم لصفة | healthy (adj) صحي |

Prefix البادئة

| Prefix البادئة | Function الوظيفة | Word الكلمة | The new word الكلمة الجديدة |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| im- | تعطى عكس المعنى | perfect (adj) ممتاز | imperfect (adj) غير مثالى |
| un- | تعطى عكس المعنى | healthy (adj) صحي | unhealthy (adj) غير صحي |

Countable & Uncountable nouns

أسماء تعدد / لا تعدد

| Countable nouns أسماء معدودة | | Uncountable nouns أسماء غير معدودة | |
|------------------------------|--------|------------------------------------|----------|
| beans | فول | tomatoes | طماطم |
| biscuits | بسكويت | vegetables | خضروات |
| cakes | كعك | | |
| | | cheese | جبنة |
| | | chocolate | شوكولاتة |
| | | fish | سمك |
| | | | sugar |
| | | | عصير |
| | | | لحم |

Similar spelling - Different meaning

| Word الكلمة | Similar word الكلمة المشابهة |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| fridge ثلاجة | bridge كوبري |
| tasty لذيذ | nasty سيئ |
| prefer يفضل | refer يشير |

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks delicious! The synonym of "delicious" is

 a) well b) nasty c) tasteless d) tasty
- To get the noun from the verb "equip", we add the suffix

 a) -ive b) -ment c) -ness d) -ion
- To get the opposite of "perfect", we add the prefix

 a) ir- b) in c) im- d) dis-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- Can you make lunch by yourself?

 Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

Lesson 1

SB page 55

Nadia Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

(1) حمص

Omar There is some salad. Is there any hummus⁽¹⁾?

(2) زيتون

Nadia No, there isn't. But there are some olives⁽²⁾.

(3) فلفل

Omar There are some peppers⁽³⁾, too.

(4) ثين

(5) زبيب

Nadia Good. Is there any cheese?



Omar Yes, there is. I've got it.



Nadia What about figs⁽⁴⁾? Are there any figs?



Omar No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia There are some raisins⁽⁵⁾.

Omar That's good.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

hummus /hu:məs/ pepper /pepər/ raisin /reɪzən/

Post-listening question:

- What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

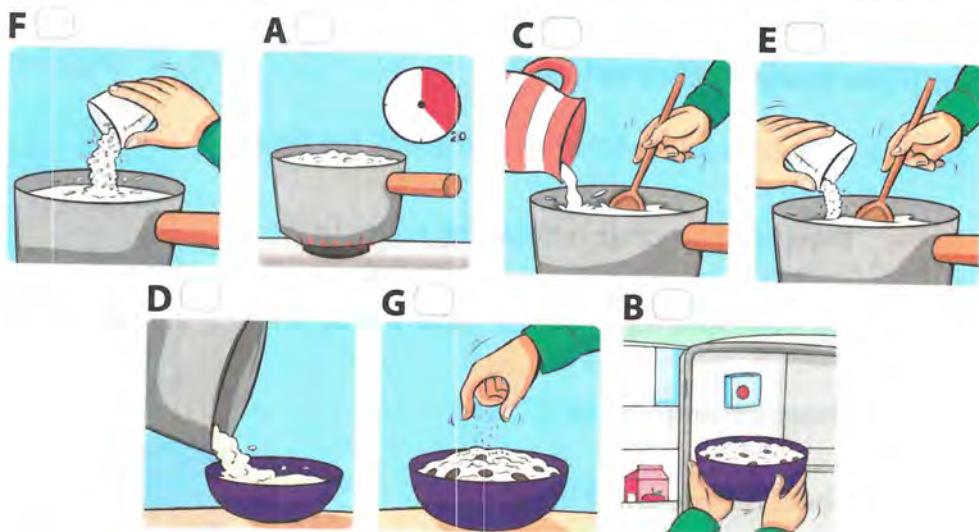
Pre-reading question:

- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

Lesson 2

Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order. SB page 56

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding



Ingredients

1 cup⁽¹⁾ of rice
2 cups of water
3 cups of milk
1 cup of sugar
 $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of raisins
 $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of nuts
 $\frac{1}{4}$ a teaspoon⁽²⁾ of cinnamon

Instructions

- Put the rice and water in a saucepan⁽³⁾.
- Boil⁽⁴⁾ the rice and water for 20 minutes.
- Add⁽⁵⁾ the milk slowly as you stir⁽⁶⁾.
- Add the sugar and stir again.
- Put the rice pudding into bowls.
- Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
- Put the rice pudding in the fridge⁽⁷⁾.

فنجان (1) ملعقة شاي (2) قدر صغير (3) يغلي (4) يغلي (5) يقلب (6) ثلاثة (7)



Note :

pudding /pʊdɪŋ/
cinnamon /sɪnəmən/
bowl /bəʊl/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ingredient /ɪngri:dɪənt/
saucepan /sɔ:speɪn/

Note:
عند إعطاء تعليمات
تبدأ الجملة بمصدر
الفعل.

Post-reading question:

- Are you going to try making rice pudding?

 **Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?**

SB page 57

Really easy!

- This is a great recipe.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't **a lot of** ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi



OK, but a bit boring



- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are **too many** raisins.
- I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Hana

Perfect!



- There are **a lot of** rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's **enough** rice pudding for the whole family.
- There's **a lot of** sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

Nabila



Note:

recipe /resipi/

coconut /kuʊkənʌt/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

 **Complete the text with **a lot of**, **enough**, **too much** or **too many**.**

WB page 110

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people, but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. " " is not a cooking verb.
a) Pudding. b) Boil. c) Stir. d) Add.
2. Put rice and water in a before cooking rice pudding.
a) bag b) teaspoon c) saucepan d) cup
3. Sami thinks that the of rice pudding is easy.
a) recipe b) recycling c) road d) equipment
4. Who cooked this? It's I like it.
a) salty b) delicious c) ugly d) unhealthy
5. the rice and water for 20 minutes.
a) Freeze b) Eat c) Boil d) Bring
6. My mother uses healthy to cook our food.
a) bowls b) ingredients c) instructions d) fridges
7. Put the rice pudding bowls.
a) from b) into c) for d) with
8. We keep our food in the to be cold and good.
a) cooker b) fridge c) desk d) bowl
9. Put the , cinnamon and nuts on top of the rice pudding.
a) water b) salt c) raisins d) peppers
10. Hazem forgot to the sugar in his tea.
a) eat b) cook c) boil d) stir
11. There are easy to make rice pudding.
a) meals b) teams c) groups d) instructions
12. We use sugar to make our food or drinks
a) ugly b) bad c) sweet d) salty
13. I like eating They are full of Vitamin E.
a) nuts b) bowls c) cups d) pots

Time to Practise



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't much sugar to tea. It is unhealthy.
a) work b) buy c) add d) bring
2. Your idea is They will like it.
a) ugly b) boring c) perfect d) bad
3. is a natural drink and very healthy.
a) Raisin b) Pepper c) Cinnamon d) Nuts
4. It's to eat lots of crisps.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) nice d) good
5. My mother always lunch at three o'clock.
a) makes b) does c) plays d) wears
6. You can put a of cinnamon now.
a) pan b) pot c) saucepan d) teaspoon
7. Most people in Egypt eat for breakfast.
a) beans b) fish c) meat d) recipes
8. Put the rice into a big
a) field b) cup c) cupboard d) bowl
9. Making rice pudding is Everyone can make it very quickly.
a) bad b) difficult c) easy d) hard
10. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like food.
a) ugly b) hot c) salty d) sweet
11. I don't like raisins. I rice pudding with coconut.
a) stir b) share c) prefer d) bring
12. Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking ten people.
a) for b) in c) at d) on
13. Now come to eat, all the food is
a) full b) ready c) unhealthy d) empty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

1 Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

- Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.

• الأسماء التي لا تُعد ليس لها جمع، لا يمكن عدّها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها.

- There is some **bread** on the table.

- There isn't any **meat** in the dish.

2 Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

(cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)

- Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.

• الأسماء المعدودة هي الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها وتكون مفرداً أو جمّعاً. يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد فقط. ينتهي الاسم الجمع غالباً بحرف (s).

Countable nouns

1

Singular مفرد

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفرداً.

- There **is** a **restaurant** in this street.

- This **is not** an **olive**. It's a **peach**.

2

Plural جمّع

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة الجمّع إذا كان الاسم جمّعاً.

- There **are** some **shops** in this street.

- There **aren't** any **peppers**.

لاحظ

يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد:

: (a – e – i – o – u)

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (t, d, k, g, f, v, s, z, tʃ, dʒ).

- Ola ate an orange.

- There's a car in front of my house.

- There's a book in my bag.



Remember

3 There is ي يوجد (للمفرد / لكمية)

There are ي يوجد (الجمع فقط)

Form:

There is / isn't ► اسم مفرد يبعد / اسم لا يبعد

- There is **an apple** on the table.

- There is **some rice** in the dish.

- There isn't **any sugar** in the tea.

Question:

Is there + اسم مفرد يبعد / اسم لا يبعد

- Is there **an apple** on the table?

There are/ aren't ► اسم جمجم

- There are **some apples** on the table.

- There are **some raisins**.

- There aren't **any potatoes** in the market.

Question:

Are there + اسم جمجم

- Are there **any apples** on the table?



Remember

4 Some & Any

بعض / أي

Some

We use "some" for **affirmative** sentences.

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يبعد (كمية).

- There are **some figs** in this dish.

- There is **some rice** in this dish.

(countable)

(uncountable)

لاحظ

We use **some** in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.

يمكننا استخدام (some) في السؤال في حالتي (العرض والطلب).

- Would you like **some** tea? ► offer عرض

- Can I have **some** books? ► request طلب

Any

We use "any" for **negative sentences** and **questions**.

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أي) مع الجمل المفافية وفي السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يبعد (كمية).

- There aren't **any** olives. (جملة منافية)

- Has koshari got **any** meat in it? (سؤال)



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. There a lot of snow in the mountains. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a) does b) is c) has d) were
- 2. There are boys in the family, but there aren't many girls. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a) too much b) much c) too many d) a lot
- 3. Don't put butter in the pan. (المدينة ٢٠٢٣)
a) enough b) many c) too much d) some
- 4. There aren't potatoes in the fridge. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a) any b) some c) an d) a
- 5. There is cheese in the fridge. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a) an b) as c) a d) some
- 6. There figs in the cupboard. (الطبقة ٢٠٢٣)
a) isn't any b) is any c) are any d) aren't any
- 7. There is rice for you.
a) enough b) any c) many d) lot
- 8. This cake is very sweet. There's too sugar in it. (الطبقة ٢٠٢٣)
a) enough b) much c) many d) lot of
- 9. There are people on the beach today. Let's go to another one. (WB)
a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of
- 10. I don't have friends.
a) a b) some c) any d) much

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Is there any computers in the classroom? (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
- 2. There are any printers in my classroom. (الطبقة ٢٠٢٣)
- 3. There are a lot of sand in the desert. (المليون ٢٠٢٣)
- 4. We shouldn't eat some crisps. (الطبقة ٢٠٢٣ blues)
- 5. There is too many kids in the club. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
- 6. There are any carrots in the fridge? (السكنية ٢٠٢٣)

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. There any notebooks in my bag.
a) is b) isn't c) are d) aren't
2. There's hummus in the jar.
a) any b) some c) many d) a lot
3. There are people in the market today.
a) too much b) much c) a lot d) too many
4. She wants to buy another book, but there enough money with her.
a) is b) are c) aren't d) isn't
5. Are there apples in the fridge?
a) a b) any c) much d) an
6. There is not rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.
a) too much b) too many c) enough d) a lot of
7. I don't have money to buy this dress.
a) any b) some c) many d) lot
8. Let's go to the shops. There is time before the train leaves.
a) little b) too many c) enough d) many
9. There figs in the cupboard.
a) is any b) are any c) aren't any d) aren't some
10. any subjects you don't like?
a) There is b) There are c) Is there d) Are there

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (.....)
2. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it. (.....)
3. She put too many salt in the food. (.....)
4. There isn't some cheese in the fridge. (.....)
5. There isn't any canals near our village. (.....)
6. There aren't a charger in my room. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معالجك.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

| Situation | ما يقال في هذا الموقف | Response | جملة الرد |
|---|------------------------|---|--|
|  online | | | |
|  What food do you like? | I like salad and meat. |  ما الطعام الذي تحبه؟ |  أحب السلطة واللحم. |
|  What food don't you like? | I don't like olives. |  ما الطعام الذي لا تحبه؟ |  لا أحب الزيتون. |
|  Is there any cheese? | Yes, there is. |  هل يوجد أي جبن؟ |  نعم، يوجد. |
|  Are there any biscuits? | No, there aren't. |  هل يوجد أي بسكويت؟ |  لا، لا يوجد. |

Speaking Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona: I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend: OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus?

Mona: (1)....., but there are some olives.

Hend: (2)..... .

Mona: Good. I like peppers. (3).....?

Hend: Yes, there is some cheese.

Mona: What about figs? (4).....?

Hend: No, there aren't any figs.

Mona: Are there any raisins?

Hend: (5)..... . They are in the fridge.



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمهين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about a dish recipe.

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة أكلة.

- I'd like to tell you about (اسم الأكلة) recipe.
- It's (easy/not easy) to make.
- There are a lot of (المكونات) in it.
- First, (الخطوة الأولى)
- Then, (الخطوة الثانية)
- After that, (الخطوة الثالثة)
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة)

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة في الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة في الفقرة.

Example

A good recipe

There are a lot of recipes, but I like Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding. There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food. This is the recipe. First, put rice and water in a saucepan and boil them for 20 minutes. Then, add milk slowly and sugar as you stir. After that, put the rice pudding into bowls and put raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top. Finally, put the rice pudding in the fridge.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A recipe of a dish I like"

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 6**Lessons
(1 & 2)

17

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What did father and mother eat?
 a) Fish.
 c) Chicken with rice.
 b) Rice with fish.
 d) Rice.
2. Where did they have their meal?
 a) At home.
 c) At club.
 b) At school.
 d) At cafe.
3. How many people went for lunch?
 a) Four.
 c) Five.
 b) Three.
 d) Two.
4. Why did they choose this place? Because it was
 a) bad
 b) happy
 c) nice
 d) far

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can find teaspoons, saucepans and cups in the
 a) kitchen
 b) hall
 c) playground
 d) library
2. This recipe is It's my favourite.
 a) boring
 b) bad
 c) perfect
 d) terrible
3. There are a lot of rice pudding online.
 a) recipes
 b) instructions
 c) daughters
 d) ingredients
4. I don't like raisins. I prefer rice pudding with
 a) peppers
 b) coconut
 c) olive
 d) salt
5. I like sweet
 a) peppers
 b) cinnamon
 c) raisins
 d) fish
6. What kind of books do you ?
 a) add
 b) boil
 c) bring
 d) prefer
7. Rice, milk, coconut and raisins are the of rice pudding.
 a) instructions
 b) ingredients
 c) recipes
 d) flavours

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any vegetables on the table. (.....) ٣٠٢٣ الفاعلية

2. There aren't too much tomatoes. (.....) ٣٠٢٤ كفر السجن

3. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....) WB

4. Can I have a apple? (.....) ٣٠٢٥ مفردات الفعل

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite food"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مقدمة في نظرية الكتاب

- 1** Pots, bowls and saucepans are all that mothers use in the kitchen.
a) food b) ingredient c) recipe d) equipment

2 We can't count
a) cinnamon b) children c) men d) sheep

3 My brother joined university in England.
a) any b) an c) a d) some

STUDY



Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 111 & 112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------|--------------|
| amazing (adj) | مذهل | potatoes (n) | بطاطس |
| fat (n) | دهون | shepherd's pie (n) | فطيرة الراعي |
| fizzy drinks (n) | مشروبات غازية | spices (n) | توابل |
| fruit juice (n) | عصير فواكه | stew (n) | حساء/يخنة |
| onions (n) | بصل | taste (n) | مذاق |

المفردات الرئيسية

African dishes أكلات إفريقية

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| kapenta (n) | كابينتا (نوع سمك) | nyama na irio (n) | نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة) |
| koshari (n) | كشرى | tagine (n) | طاجن |

المفردات الإضافية

Additional Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------|
| article (n) | مقالة | dry (y ied) (v) | يجفف |
| body (n) | جسم/جسد | introduce (d) (v) | يقدم |
| chocolate ice cream (n) | آيس كريم شيكولاتة | introduction (n) | مقدمة |
| cooking pot (n) | إناء للطهي | pasta (n) | مكرونة |
| discuss (ed) (v) | يناقش | traditional (adj) | تقليدي |

Adjectives to describe the food صفات تصف الطعام

| | | | |
|-----------|------|-----------|------|
| amazing | مذهل | great | عظيم |
| delicious | لذيذ | healthy | صحي |
| fantastic | رائع | wonderful | رايم |

Check Point**Choose and complete:****spices – fizzy – pot – dry**

- 1** We shouldn't have a lot of drinks. It's unhealthy.
- 2** My mum added some to the recipe.
- 3** It was raining outside. I should my clothes.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| add > to your weight | يضيف إلى وزنك | give > advice on | يعطى نصيحة لـ |
| catch (caught) > fish | يصطاد سمكة | make > snacks | يعد وجبات خفيفة |
| cause > illness | تسبب المرض | order > food | يطلب طعاماً |
| clean > teeth | تنظيف أسنانك | see > a doctor | يزور طبيباً |

التعابيرات اللغوية**Prepositions**

| | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|----------|
| a glass of | كوب من | careful with | حريص على |
| a meal with | وجبة بها | good for | مفيدة لـ |
| a piece of | قطعة من | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| at dinner time | في وقت العشاء | type of | نوع من |

حروف الجر**Words and Opposites**

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|----------|----------|--------------------|--------|
| careful | حريص | careless | مملاً |
| forget | ينسى | remember | يتذكر |
| good for | مفيدة لـ | bad for | ضار لـ |
| hungry | جائع | full | ممتلئة |

الكلمات وعکسها**Check Point****Choose and complete:****clean – hungry – of – at**

- 1** Please, mum. I need a piece cake.
- 2** I can't wait. I'm very
- 3** We should our teeth in the morning.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعابيرات اللغوية
وحرروف الجر.

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 It is a good idea to + inf.

إنها فكرة جيدة أن (وتستخدم لتقديم النصيحة)

- It is a good idea to eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

2 try + (v + ing) / noun / try to + inf.

يُجرب بـ / يحاول أن

- I'd like to try koshari/eating koshari.
- We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

3 enjoy + (v + ing) / noun

يسعد بـ

- I enjoy watching TV.
- I enjoy music.

Vocabulary Builder



جزء إثباتي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

الكلمات ومرادفتها

Words and Synonyms

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (Meaning) | مرادفها |
|---------|--------|-------------------|---------|
| careful | حريص | cautious | حريص |
| right | صحيح | correct | صحيح |

Suffix اللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Suffix | اللاحقة | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|---------------|--------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------|-------------------|----------------|
| ill (adj) | مريض | -ness | | تحول الصفة لاسم | | illness (n) | مرض |
| introduce (v) | يقدم | -tion | | تحول الفعل لاسم | | introduction (n) | مقدمة |
| tradition (n) | تقليد | -al | | تحول الاسم لصفة | | traditional (adj) | تقليدي |

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What are your favourite snacks?

 Look at the photos and read the introduction. What does the article give advice on?

SB page 58

Lesson 3

(1) وجبات خفيفة

(2) دهون

(3) ملح

(4) مذاق حلو

(5) عصير فواكه

Healthy Snacks

Everyone loves **snacks**⁽¹⁾! But some snacks are bad for us.

What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks?

Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of **fat**⁽²⁾ and **salt**⁽³⁾. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.



Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the **sweet taste**⁽⁴⁾. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.



Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.



Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. **Fruit juice**⁽⁵⁾ has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Note:

biscuit /bɪskɪt/ taste /teɪst/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question:

- What types of snacks should we eat a lot?

Pre-listening question:

- Should we drink a lot of water? Why/ Why not?



Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6.

SB page 59

Presenter It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr. Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr. Randa, what should we drink?

Dr. Randa Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat⁽¹⁾ or sugar.

Presenter OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

Dr. Randa Some drinks⁽²⁾ have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks⁽³⁾ don't have any sugar. Are they okay?

Dr. Randa No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

Dr. Randa Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?

(1) دهون

(2) مشروبات

(3) مشروبات غازية



Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite food?

Lesson 4

 Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 60

Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa

- (1) طاجن
- (2) سسعة/بخنة
- (3) توابل
- (4) مدخل



I live in Morocco. Tagine⁽¹⁾ is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew⁽²⁾ with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices⁽³⁾.

The taste is amazing⁽⁴⁾! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio⁽⁵⁾ for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful⁽⁶⁾! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena



Kapenta⁽⁷⁾ is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions⁽⁸⁾. It is great!

Bradley

- (5) نياما نا ايلو (اسم أكلة)
- (6) رائع
- (7) كابينتا (اسم أكلة)
- (8) بصل

Note:

tagine /tæ'ʒi:n/ stew /stju:/ spice /spairs/
Zimbabwe /zim'bɑ:bwi/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question:

- Which meal would you like to try? Why?



Listen and tick (✓) the ingredients for shepherd's pie.

WB page 112



In England, people often have a traditional meal called **shepherd's pie⁽¹⁾**. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is **wonderful⁽²⁾**.

My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream.

فطيرة الراعي (1)

رائع (2)

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

shepherd /'ʃepərd/ pie /paɪ/

Issues

Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?

اعمل مع زميلك. تناقش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب لا نفعل؟

1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.

- You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.

2. I want to look after my teeth.

3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.

4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.

You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.

Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink lots of as they are not good for your body.
a) fizzy drinks b) milk c) apple juice d) water
2. Koshari is a famous Egyptian
a) dish b) fish c) fig d) fan
3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of and sugar.
a) meat b) fat c) spices d) vegetables
4. Tagine is a traditional
a) sport b) hobby c) drink d) meal
5. Please, do not take any between breakfast and lunch.
a) pots b) articles c) snacks d) snakes
6. give food a good taste.
a) Cultures b) Spaces c) Spices d) Flavours
7. I always eat of fruit at lunchtime.
a) prices b) prizes c) spices d) pieces
8. Fruit has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.
a) fan b) fizzy c) fat d) juice
9. She is still weak after her
a) advice b) pie c) illness d) situation
10. Beans and koshari are meals in Egypt.
a) bad b) unknown c) unusual d) traditional
11. People of Kenya often have meat for lunch.
a) glass b) article c) pot d) stew
12. We eat when we are
a) hungry b) full c) careful d) wrong
13. We went to the lake to fish.
a) clean b) give c) catch d) cause

Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kapenta is a type of
a) meat b) fruit c) vegetable d) fish
2. Koshari is a delicious meal with
a) rice b) fruit c) fish d) potatoes
3. Can I have a of cake, please?
a) cup b) piece c) bottle d) saucepan
4. When he drank the juice, he liked the very much.
a) paste b) test c) taste d) shoes
5. Water hasn't got any or sugar.
a) glass b) pan c) pot d) fat
6. Drinks with a lot of sugar are bad for our
a) pieces b) pies c) bodies d) houses
7. We should try to drink a of milk every day.
a) glass b) pot c) bowl d) piece
8. We love chicken and rice. They are!
a) salty b) bad c) scary d) delicious
9. After washing the clothes, we should put them in the sun to
a) boil b) dry c) cool d) heat
10. We can with our tongues.
a) smell b) taste c) touch d) see
11. Everyone loves snacks, but some snacks are bad us.
a) with b) at c) to d) for
12. The doctor gave me on the food I should eat.
a) advise b) advice c) device d) devise
13. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking in Morocco.
a) piece b) pot c) body d) glass

< حل العديد من التدريبات، قم بجاهة ال Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 Giving advice

اعطاء النصيحة

- We use **should/shouldn't** to say that something is or is not a good idea.

- عند إعطاء النصيحة نستخدم (**should**) (ينبغي أن) أو (**shouldn't**) (لا ينبغي أن) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

Affirmative

Subject + **should** + inf.

- We **should drink** a lot of water.
- We **should eat** healthy food.

Negative

Subject + **shouldn't** + inf.

- You **shouldn't eat** too many crisps.
- You **should not drink** too much fruit juice.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Ali is ill, he shouldn't see a doctor. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**should**) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شيء مفيد.

2 We should ate healthy food. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**eat**) لوجود **should** التي يأتي بعدها مصدر.

Yes/No questions:

Should + subject + inf.?

• A: **Should we eat** healthy snacks?

B: Yes, you **should**.

• A: **Should he play** video games tonight?

B: No, he **shouldn't**.



تستخدم **should** لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأي:

• We **should** visit our grandparents tonight.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Should we drank lots of fizzy drinks? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**drink**) لوجود **should** التي يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

2 No, we should make noise in the library. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**shouldn't**) لوجود **No** الدالة على النفي.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't it.
a) touched b) touches c) touch d) touching
2. You never leave without having breakfast.
a) shouldn't b) should c) will d) won't
3. People should between two and four pieces of fruit a day.
a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate
4. eat a lot of vegetables.
a) We have b) Have we c) Should we d) We should
5. You should careful with the food you eat.
a) am b) is c) are d) be
6. We drink too much fruit juice. It is unhealthy.
a) should not b) should c) must d) aren't
7. What types of snacks eat a lot?
a) we should b) should we c) should d) we
8. You should always your mother.
a) helping b) to help c) help d) helped
9. You ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
a) should b) shouldn't c) have d) haven't
10. We eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should cleaning your teeth in the morning. (.....)
2. We should study hard for our exams? (.....)
3. They should drinks healthy water. (.....)
4. Hany should eat snacks in the classroom. (.....)
5. That's a fantastic book. You should reading it. (.....)
6. You should eat too much chocolate. (.....)

D Skills



Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تطوير الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write about healthy snacks.

كيفية الكتابة عن الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة.

- Everyone loves snacks.
- Some snacks are bad for us.
- Fruit is very good for us.
- Vegetables don't have much sugar.

Writing tips

Use linking words to connect the sentences and make the paragraph a well-knit whole.

استخدم الروابط للربط بين الجمل ولعمل فقرة مكتملة.

Example

Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

2. How to write a review of a café.

كيفية كتابة نقد عن مقهى

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت).
- We had (الطعام).
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.
- I went with (الأشخاص).
- The food was (صفاته).
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

Example

A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

TEST YOURSELF**Unit 6**Lessons
(3 & 4)

17.5

(العنوان)

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

To be healthy, our bodies need food, exercise and enough sleep. Food gives us energy, but we should choose the healthy kind of food. The good food should contain meat, rice, beans, fruit and vegetables. They build our bodies and make us strong. Fruit and vegetables give us vitamins to stop illness. They also give us fibre which helps us digest our food. Exercises help us to be fit. Enough sleep helps us to rest and renew our energy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a title to this text.
2. What should good food contain?
3. Why do you think we should eat healthy food?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| a) animals | b) birds | c) people | d) things |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
5. "....." means to do something again after a pause, usually with more energy.

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| a) Renew | b) Digest | c) Contain | d) Fit |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|
6. Exercises help us to be

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| a) fat | b) fit | c) fake | d) fool |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this type fish. It's salty.

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| a) at | b) on | c) of | d) from |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
2. Eating lots of fats and sugar much to your weight.

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| a) adds | b) makes | c) catches | d) orders |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
7. Chop the vegetables into and eat them with your breakfast.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| a) spears | b) species | c) spices | d) pieces |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
3. is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| a) Cheese | b) Koshari | c) Kapenta | d) Milk |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
4. Eating unhealthy food illness.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| a) causes | b) catches | c) adds | d) cleans |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
5. When we are ill, we should a doctor.

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| a) give | b) cause | c) see | d) give |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|

6. I look my little sister when my mother is out.
 a) for b) after c) at d) up
7. Crisps every day! That's very bad for you. You stop eating them!
 a) should b) shouldn't
 c) mustn't d) should never
8. You study hard to get high marks.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't
 d) doesn't
9. You should that new film. It's great!
 a) seeing b) to see c) sees
 d) see

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's a beautiful day. We shouldn't walk to the park. (.....)
2. Children shouldn't running in the street. (.....)
3. We shouldn't be very careful when we cook in the kitchen. (.....)
4. We should go to school on time? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Food you should or shouldn't eat"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مُجَبَّ عَنْهُ فِي نَهَايَةِ الْكِتَابِ

- 1 People should eat between two and four pieces of fruit day.
 a) an b) in c) a d) at
- 2 We should try to drink a glass of milk
 a) every day b) everyday c) every d) day
- 3 We never eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth.
 a) should b) should to c) shouldn't d) shouldn't to

STUDY**Lessons 5 & 6**

SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 113 - 115

A Vocabulary**Key Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|---------------|------------------|-------------|------------|
| assistant (n) | مساعد/بائٹ | dessert (n) | حلوى |
| café (n) | مقهى | menu (n) | قائمة طعام |
| chef (n) | شيف/ كبير الطهاة | waiter (n) | نادل/جرسون |
| customer (n) | زيون | | |

المفردات الرئيسية**Additional Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| basbousa (n) | بسبوسة | look (ed) like | يشبه |
| cheese pizza (n) | بيتزا بالجبنية | real (adj) | حقيقي |
| go back (v) | يعود/يرجع | restaurant (n) | مطعم |
| hope (d) (v) | يأمل | review (n) | نقد |
| kunafa (n) | كنافة | tomato pizza (n) | بيتزا بالطماطم |

المفردات الإضافية**Check Point****Choose and complete:****chef – menu – review – kunafa**

- 1 My uncle is a famous
- 2 I read a about that restaurant.
- 3 My favourite dessert is

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------|--------|-----------------|
| look > nice/delicious | يبدو لطيفاً/ لذيذاً | make > | a list | يقوم بعمل قائمة |
| write > a list | يكتب قائمة | > | sure | يتناول |

التعابير اللغوية

يقوم بعمل قائمة
يتناول

Prepositions

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| for lunch | على الغداء | on the sea | حروف الجر في البحر |
| look out of | ينظر من | on the water | في الماء |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|
| choose يختار | chose | chosen |
| write يكتب | wrote | written |

Words and Opposites

| Word | الكلمة | Opposite (Antonym) | عكسها |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------|
| usual معتاد | unusual غير معتاد | | |
| small صغير | large كبير | | |

Check Point

Choose and complete: **looks – for – on – make**

- 1 I bought some bread lunch.
- 2 Students should sure from their answers.
- 3 This tagine delicious.

يمهد هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
ودرروف الجر.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

SB page 60

Assistant Hello. What would you like today?

Customer I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza,
please.

Assistant OK. Anything else?

Customer Yes, a salad, please.

Assistant Small or large?

Customer Small, please.

Assistant And would you like any drinks?

Customer Have you got any fruit juice?

Assistant Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant Is that everything?

Customer Yes, it is.

Assistant That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer Thank you, here you are.

Post-listening question:

- What kind of pizza would the customer like to have?



Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Did you try eating in a café? What did you like about it?

 Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit?

SB page 62

City Café



Great visit! ★★★★☆

Review by: Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!! 😊

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

Post-reading questions:

1 Why did Sara's mum have a salad?

2 Who is Ashraf?

Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite meal?

 **Put the article in the correct order.**

WB page 114



- 1.** I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)
- 2.** I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.
- 3.** We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
- 4.** It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

Post-reading question:

- Why did they like the café?

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of food do you like?

 **Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.**



A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Post-reading question:

- Why was the fish very fresh?

Project

Write a recipe for a meal or snack.

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسية) أو وجبة خفيفة.

1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
 - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
 - Put the instructions in the correct order.
3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter gave me the to choose food.
a) list b) book c) menu d) dish

2. I ate a small pizza, but my brother ordered a one.
a) tiny b) little c) small d) large

3. A/An is the person who buys things from a shop.
a) waiter b) customer c) assistant d) chef

4. He cooks food in a restaurant. He is a
a) teacher b) doctor c) farmer d) chef

5. The works in a restaurant.
a) waiter b) water c) nurse d) custo

6. We went to a nice to have our lunch out.
a) classroom b) playground c) library d) resta

7. My father took us to a for lunch.
a) café b) farm c) field d) hall

8. We chose this café for lunch because it very nice.
a) saw b) looked c) made d) did

9. The tomato pizza has a good
a) taste b) test c) toast d) tast

10. I love looking the window and watching the cars in the street.
a) out of b) out c) of d) with

11. Ashraf and I both had rice lunch.
a) at b) for c) on d) with

12. We the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the menu.
a) boil b) cook c) add d) cho

13. I'd like to eat a cheese and tomato
a) pizza b) juice c) soup d) bre

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسلحة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



What would you like?

ماذا تريد؟

أريد بيتزا.



I'd like pizza.

Have you got any salad?

هل لديكم سلطة؟



Yes, we have. Small or large?

نعم لدينا. أتريد طبقاً كبيراً أم صغيراً؟

طبقاً كبيراً من فضلك.



Is that everything?

هل هذا كل ما تريده؟

نعم، شكراً لك.



Anything else?

هل تريدين شيئاً آخر؟

لا، شكراً.



That's 100 pounds.

الحساب مائة جنيه.

شكراً، تفضل.



Thank you, here you are.

PRACTICE

Speaking Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Complete the following dialogue:

1 - 10 lines

- Amgad is ordering food in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, how can I help you?

Amgad : Hello, (1).....

Waiter : Here's the menu.

Amgad : (2).....

Waiter : With or without rice?

Amgad : (3).....

Waiter : Anything else?

Amgad : No ,thank you, . (4).....?

Waiter : That's 80 pounds ,please.

Amgad : (5).....

Time to Practise



Complete the following dialogue:

- A customer is at a restaurant to have his lunch.

Assistant : What would you like?

Customer : (1).....

Assistant : And would you like any drinks?

Customer : (2).....?

Assistant : Yes, we've got tea and coffee.

Customer : (3).....

Assistant : Coffee! OK.

Customer : (4).....?

Assistant : That's 110 pounds, please.

Customer : (5).....

TEST YOURSELF**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

A customer wants to eat a chicken pizza.

Waiter : How can I help you?

Customer: (1).....?

Waiter : Yes, we've got a chicken pizza. Would you like a small or large one?

Customer: (2).....

Waiter : Would you like a drink?

Customer: Yes, please. (3).....

Waiter : OK.

Customer: (4).....?

Waiter : That's 150 pounds.

Customer: (5).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter asked me what food I'd like to
 a) say b) tell c) bring d) order
2. Mum likes eating salad. It is
 a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) weak
3. We catch fish from the
 a) lake b) mountain c) forest d) cave
4. When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the
 a) diagram b) poster c) list d) menu
5. I like pizza. It's a delicious
 a) mail b) male c) meal d) mile
6. Tagine is a with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.
 a) straw b) stew c) rice d) sugar
7. We went to the yesterday to have our dinner. It was great.
 a) café b) coffee c) cinema d) park
8. We should lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.
 a) had b) having c) has d) have

9. Lama feels tired. She have a rest.

- a) needs
- b) should
- c) has
- d) does

10. What kinds of food should we?

- a) eating
- b) eat
- c) ate
- d) eaten

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Students shouldn't making noise in the library. (.....)

2. The doctor told him that he shouldn't eat less. He's too fat. (.....)

3. You shouldn't help your little brother. (.....)

4. A: I'm very ill. B: You should go to school today. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A review of a restaurant you visited"



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 Read this review if you want to sure that this café is amazing.

- a) have
- b) take
- c) do
- d) make

2 My father is very ill. He have unhealthy food.

- a) shouldn't
- b) should
- c) can
- d) must

Review

on Unit 6

Vocabulary

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| amazing | مذهل |
| peppers | فلفل |
| bowl | سلطانية |
| raisins | زبيب |
| recipe | وصفة طعام |
| cinnamon | قرفة |
| rice pudding | رز بودن (دبو) |
| coconut | جزر الهند |
| salt | ملح |
| saucepan | قدر صغير |
| snack | وجبة خفيفة |
| fat | دهون |
| spices | توابل |
| stew | تساء / دجاجة |
| fizzy drinks | مشروبات غازية |
| sweet taste | مذاق حلو |
| healthy | صح |
| tagine | طاجن |
| hummus | هض |
| teaspoon | ملعقة شاي |
| ingredients | مقادير/مكونات |
| olives | زيتون |

Language

Skills

- 1 Some/ any:** بعض / أي
(some)
 • There are **some nuts**.
 • There is **some cheese**.
- (any)**
 • Are there **any chips**?
 • There isn't **any cheese**.
- 2 a lot of / enough / too many / too much:** كثير من / كافٍ / كثير جداً
a lot of / enough + جم / **asm لا يكفي /asm جم جداً**
 • My little brother eats **a lot of sugar** every day and that is too bad.
- 3 Giving advice:** اقتراح
الخطىء
 • We **should drink** a lot of water.
 • You **shouldn't eat** too many crisps.
- 1 Ask and answer questions about food:**
 • What food do you like?
 - I like salad and meat.
 • What food don't you like?
 - I don't like olives.
 • Is there any cheese?
 - Yes, there is.
 • Are there any biscuits?
 - No, there aren't.
- 2 Ordering food in a café:**
 • What would you like?
 - I'd like pizza.
 • Have you got any salad?
 - Yes, we have. Small or large?
 • Is that everything?
 - Yes, thank you.
 • Anything else?
 - No, thanks.
- 3 Ordering food in a café:**
 • That's 100 pounds.
 - Thank you, here you are.

**A Listening****1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What did you have in the café?
a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
2. What did your cousins have?
a) Fish. b) Basbousa. c) Koshari. d) Kunafa.
3. How was the food?
a) Hot. b) Spicy. c) Salty. d) Delicious.
4. Who liked the food?
a) You. b) Your family. c) Your cousins. d) All of us.

B Language Functions**2 Complete the following dialogue:****Sama is asking Nada about her favourite dish.****Sama :** Hi, Nada!**Nada :** Hi, Sama!**Sama :** (1).....?**Nada :** Molokhia. What about you?**Sama :** I love Koshari.**Nada :** (3).....?**Sama :** Yes, of course. Rice, pasta, hummus and lentils.**Nada :** Good. (4).....**Sama :** Will you try it?**Nada :** (5).....**C Reading Comprehension****3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Africa has a lot of interesting kinds of food. Egypt, for example is famous for "koshari". It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta, tomato sauce and fried onions. It's very popular; many people like it. In Morocco, there is a traditional meal called

"tagine", it's a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing, the name of tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Zimbabwe, people often eat "kapenta". It's a type of fish which people dry in the sun. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions. It's great. In Kenya, people like "nyama na irio"; it's a stew with meat and potatoes. People there often make it for dinner. Tell me, which food you would like to try. For me, I like most traditional Egyptian food: koshari, falafel and kebab. All have special flavours.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

3. Why do you think people in Egypt like koshari?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "type" means

- a) piece b) snack c) kind d) slice

5. People of Kenya often have meat stew for

- a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) break

6. The writer likes koshari which has got rice, pasta and sauce.

- a) potato b) meat c) vegetable d) tomato



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Roz Bel laban is the name for the Egyptian rice

- a) falafel b) pudding c) ful medames d) koshari

2. Which of these can you boil water in?

- a) Ball. b) Cup. c) Glass. d) Saucepan.

3. Most children love food that has sweet

- a) kind b) type c) taste d) test

4. Waiter: That's 150 pounds.: Here you are.

- a) Helper b) Customer c) Seller d) Worker

5. We should our teeth before we sleep.
a) give b) catch c) add d) clean

6. We bought a lot of vegetables and made a nice
a) chips b) salad c) kunafa d) rice pudding

7. I'd like to have fish and rice lunch today.
a) in b) of c) for d) on

8. There some water in the bottle.
a) isn't b) is c) aren't d) are

9. Yara likes to eat meat for dinner.
a) any b) some c) a d) an

10. She's always tired. She not go to bed late every night.
a) hasn't b) shouldn't c) should d) must

٢٠٢٢ - السجن كفر

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She has any apple. (.....) الشريحة ٣٠٢٣

2. Is there any mobile phones? (.....) الاسكندرية ٣٠٢٣

3. He can't sleep as he has too many coffee. (.....) الفلاحية ٣٠٢٣

4. We should has a lot of water a day. (.....)

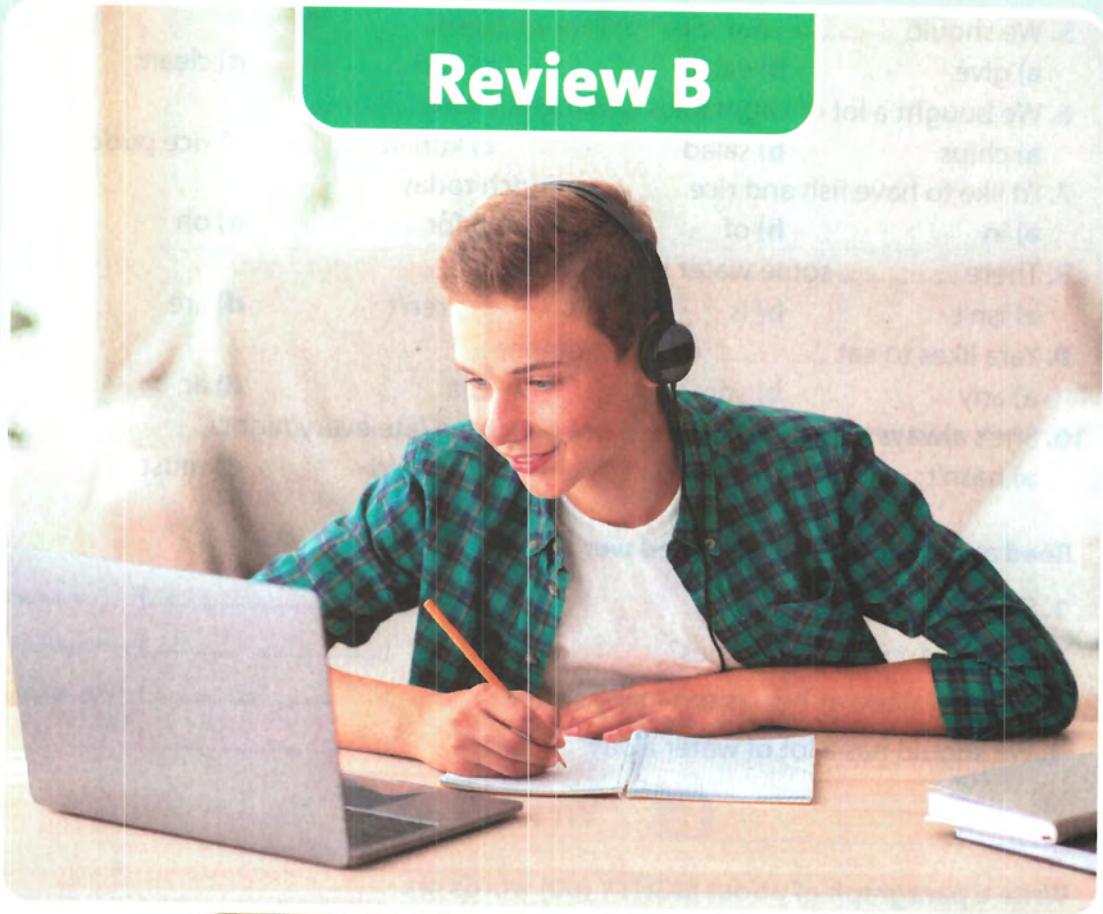
E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A healthy meal you had"

WB

Review B



Units 4, 5 & 6

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 | WB pages 116 & 117

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

 Match paragraphs 1–4 with the headings a–d.

Sham El-Nessim

1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year.

(١) فسقیخ

We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!



2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.



3. A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy fesekh^(١)?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

4. What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe for it.

Post-reading questions:

1 How do you eat fesekh?

2 What did you do at Sham El-Nessim last year?



Speaker: In the UK⁽¹⁾, many people eat **pancakes**⁽²⁾ at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes!

Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake.

Eat your pancakes with **honey**⁽³⁾ and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice.

Hmm, they are delicious.

المملكة المتحدة (1)

الكعك المحملي (2)

عسل النحل (3)

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of pancakes?

Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list. WB page 116



Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people.

Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona



Scan & Listen



End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Shorouk goes to school

- a) alone
- b) with Lubna only
- c) with her mother
- d) with Lubna and Alaa

2. Shorouk is in the stage.

- a) nursery
- b) preparatory
- c) secondary
- d) university

3. Shorouk's parents work in

- a) the same place
- b) different places
- c) the same school
- d) a factory

4. work in a hospital.

- a) Alaa's parents
- b) Lubna's parents
- c) Shorouk's parents
- d) No parents



B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nesma and Reem go to the school library.**Reem :** Good morning, Nesma, when will we start doing our research?**Nesma :** During the break.**Reem :** Great. Where (1).....?**Nesma :** In the school library.**Reem :** Are (2).....?**Nesma :** Of course, I'm ready.**Reem :** Is it easy to find the books we need?**Nesma :** (3).....**Reem :** Who will help us there?**Nesma :** (4).....**Reem :** I hope (5).....

C

Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?
.....
 2. Why does she want to speak English?
.....
 3. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

D

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ...

- a) 3D printer
 - b) diary
 - c) mouse
 - d) laptop

10. Why don't we swimming next week?

- a) go
 - b) do
 - c) make
 - d) see

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
 2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)
 3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
 4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

E

Writing

6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

Listening Texts

Unit 1 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris. He works very hard. My mother is a teacher. My two brothers and I go to the same school.

Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Heidi is an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in a small house. Heidi sleeps in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk.

Unit 2 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping.

Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In the USA, there is a lot of snow in winter. The children travel to school on a snowmobile. It's cold, but it's fast- and fun!

Unit 3 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games. His favourite subject is English.

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite book is called "Gulliver's Travels", by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm.

Unit 4 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I love technology! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Rana is my best friend. Her favourite subject is computer studies. She likes technology. She spends a lot of time on her laptop playing video games.

Unit 5 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last winter, Ragab travelled to Aswan. He travelled with his family. They took a train. It was a fantastic journey. He bought many souvenirs from the shops there.

Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I went to Jordan by plane last holiday. It was great. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We swam every day. We visited a lot of famous places.

Unit 6 Test yourself 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, I went with my mum, dad and my little sister to a cafe near the river. I had chicken with rice, but my parents had rice with fish. My dad chose this place because it looked nice.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I had my favourite meal, koshari in a café for lunch. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. It was delicious.

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Shorouk is 12 years old. She is in preparatory one. She goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. Shorouk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) same 2. d) have
3. c) We

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Are 2. good at
3. doesn't have 4. is

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) have 2. c) find
3. b) on

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) after 2. a) never does
3. c) Sometimes

Lessons 3 & 4

1. today's 2. chemist's
3. They

Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) when 2. a) quite
3. d) have

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) description 2. d) is able
3. a) have

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) interesting 2. c) adjectives
3. a) shout

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) by 2. b) called
3. c) fun

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) design 2. d) laptop computers
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. b) have 2. d) is using
3. c) are always

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) answer 2. a) when
3. b) don't

Unit 5

Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) echo 2. a) call out
3. c) called

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) get to 2. a) in
3. b) didn't go

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) snails 2. a) for example
3. d) were you

Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) equipment 2. a) cinnamon
3. c) a

Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) a 2. a) every day
3. a) should

Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) make
2. a) shouldn't